EPSON

EXCEED YOUR VISION

Epson AcuLaser CX17 Series

User's Guide

Contents

Chapter 3 *Printer Management Software*

Chapter 4 *Printer Connection and Software Installation*

Chapter 5 *Printing Basics*

Chapter 6 **Copying**

Chapter 7 **Scanning**

Chapter 8 *Faxing (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)*

Chapter 9 *Using the Operator Panel Menus and Keypad*

Chapter 10 *Troubleshooting*

Chapter 11 *Maintenance*

Appendix A *Where To Get Help*

Index

Preface

Copyright and Trademarks

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Seiko Epson Corporation. No patent liability is assumed with respect to the use of the information contained herein.

Neither is any liability assumed for damages resulting from the use of the information contained herein. Neither Seiko Epson Corporation nor its affiliates shall be liable to the purchaser of this product or third parties for damages, losses, costs, or expenses incurred by purchaser or third parties as a result of: accident, misuse, or abuse of this product or unauthorized modifications, repairs, or alterations to this product, or (excluding the U.S.) failure to strictly comply with Seiko Epson Corporation's operating and maintenance instructions.

Seiko Epson Corporation and its affiliates shall not be liable against any damages or problems arising from the use of any options or any consumable products other than those designated as Original Epson Products or Epson Approved Products by Seiko Epson Corporation.

Apple®, Bonjour®, ColorSync®, Macintosh®, and Mac OS® are trademarks of Apple Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

Microsoft®, Windows Vista®, Windows®, and Windows Server® are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

EPSON is a registered trademark and EPSON AcuLaser is a trademark of Seiko Epson Corporation.

General Notice: Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and may be trademarks of their respective owners. Epson disclaims any and all rights in those marks.

Copyright © 2011 Seiko Epson Corporation. All rights reserved.

Using This Guide

Conventions

1. In this guide, personal computers and workstations are collectively called "computers".

2. The following terms are used throughout this guide:

   Important:
   Important information that must be read and followed.

   Note:
   Additional information that merits emphasis.

   See Also:
   References within this guide.

3. Orientation of documents or paper is described in this guide as follows:

   ⬜, ⬜, Long Edge Feed (LEF): Loading the document or paper with the long edge into the machine as shown in the illustration below.

   ⬜, ⬜, Short Edge Feed (SEF): Loading the document or paper with the short edge into the machine as shown in the illustration below.
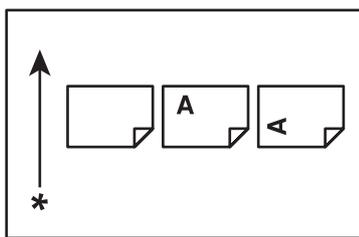
   LEF Orientation   SEF Orientation
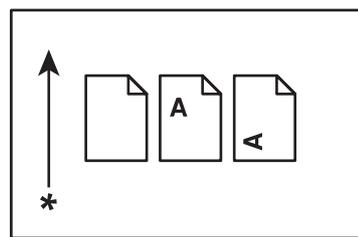
   * Paper feed direction

4. The screen shots and illustrations used in this guide vary depending on the model of your printer. Some of the items in the screen shots may not be displayed or available depending on your printer model.

5. Some features are not available on some models.

Illegal Copies and Printouts

Copying or printing certain documents may be illegal in your country. Penalties of fines or imprisonment may be imposed on those found guilty. The following are examples of items that may be illegal to copy or print in your country.

❏ Currency

❏ Banknotes and checks

❏ Bank and government bonds and securities

❏ Passports and identification cards

❏ Copyright material or trademarks without the consent of the owner

❏ Postage stamps and other negotiable instruments

This list is not inclusive and no liability is assumed for either its completeness or accuracy. In case of doubt, contact your legal counsel.

Product Features

About the Epson AcuLaser CX17 Series

The Epson AcuLaser CX17 series consist of the following three products:

Epson AcuLaser CX17NF	Print, Copy, Scan and Fax features are available. Compatible with network and USB connection.
Epson AcuLaser CX17WF	Print, Copy, Scan and Fax features are available. Compatible with network connection, including wireless communication, and USB connection.
Epson AcuLaser CX17	Print, Copy and Scan features are available. Compatible with USB connection.

Features

This section describes the product features and indicates their links.

Manual Duplex Print
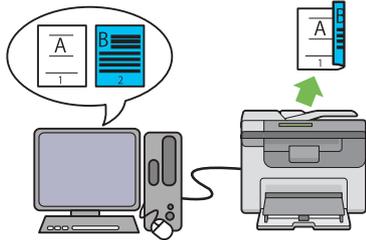
Duplex print is to print two or more pages on the front and back sides of a single sheet of paper manually. This feature allows you to reduce the paper consumption.

For more information, see "Manual Duplex Printing (Windows Print Driver Only)" on page 132.

N-Up (**2-in-1 Copy**)
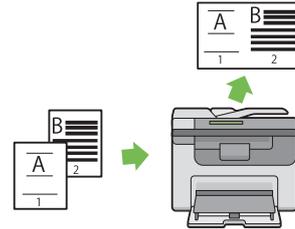
N-Up copy enables you to print multiple pages on a single sheet of paper. This feature allows you to reduce the paper consumption.

For more information, see "N-Up" on page 171.

Scanning to a USB Storage Device
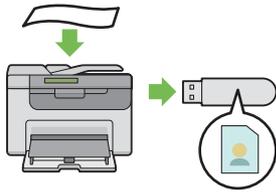
You do not need a computer to connect your USB storage device to save the scanned data. Insert your USB storage device in the port on the printer, and save the scanned data directly to your USB storage device.

For more information, see "Scanning to a USB Storage Device" on page 205.

Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)
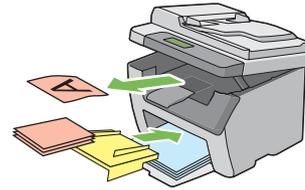
Print media loaded on the PSI is given precedence over those loaded on the multipurpose feeder (MPF). Using the PSI allows you to use other types or sizes of print media preferentially over the regular print media loaded on the MPF.

For more information, see "Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 127.

Printing Through Wireless Connection (Wireless Print) (Epson AcuLaser CX17WF Only)
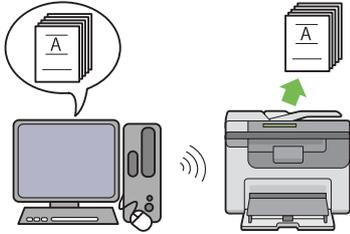
The Wireless LAN feature on your printer allows you to install the printer at any location, and enables printing without a wired connection to your computer.

The Wireless LAN feature is unavailable depending on the region you purchased.

For more information, see "Configuring Wireless Settings (Epson AcuLaser CX17WF Only)" on page 57.

Chapter 1

Specifications

Copy Function

Items	Description
Type	Console
Memory	128 MB
HDD	—
Color Capability	Full color
Scanning Resolution	❏ Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF: Document glass: 600 × 600 dpi Automatic document feeder: 600 × 300 dpi ❏ Epson AcuLaser CX17: Document glass: 600 × 600 dpi
Printing Resolution	Output resolution: 1200 × 2400 dpi Data processing resolution: 600 × 600 dpi
Halftone/Printable Colors	256 color gradation for each color (16,700,000 colors)
Original Paper Size	❏ Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF: Document glass: The maximum size is 215.9 × 297 mm for both sheets and books. Automatic document feeder: The maximum size is 215.9 × 355.6 mm. ❏ Epson AcuLaser CX17: Document glass: The maximum size is 215.9 × 297 mm for both sheets and books.
Output Paper Size	Multipurpose feeder/Priority sheet inserter: Maximum: Legal Minimum: 76.2 × 127 mm (3 × 5") Image loss width: Top edge, 4 mm or less; bottom edge, 4 mm or less; left and right edges, 4 mm or less

Items	Description
Output Paper Weight	Multipurpose feeder/Priority sheet inserter: 60 – 163 gsm **Important:** Use paper recommended by Epson. Copying may not be performed correctly depending on the conditions.
Reduction/Enlargement	Size-for-Size: 1:1 ± 1.3% Preset %: 1:0.500, 1:0.707, 1:0.816, 1:1.225, 1:1.414, 1:2.000 Variable %: 1:0.25 – 1:4.00 (1% increments)
Continuous Copy Speed	❑ Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF: Document glass: Monochrome: A4: 15 sheets/minute Color: A4: 12 sheets/minute Automatic document feeder: Monochrome: A4: 10 sheets/minute Color: A4: 2 sheets/minute ❑ Epson AcuLaser CX17: Document glass: Monochrome: A4: 15 sheets/minute Color: A4: 12 sheets/minute **Important:** ❑ The speed may be reduced due to image quality adjustment. ❑ The performance may be reduced depending on the paper type or paper tray.
Paper Tray Capacity	Standard: 150 sheets (Multipurpose feeder) + 10 sheets (Priority sheet inserter) Maximum paper capacity: 160 sheets (standard)

Items	Description
Continuous Copy	99 images **Note:** The machine may pause temporarily to perform image stabilization.

Output Tray Capacity	❏ Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF:
	   Center output tray:
	   Approximately 100 sheets (A4)
	   Document output tray:
	   Approximately 15 sheets (A4)
	
	❏ Epson AcuLaser CX17:
	   Center output tray:
	   Approximately 100 sheets (A4)

Power Supply	AC 220 – 240 V ± 10%/110 – 127 V ± 10%, 5/7 A for both 50/60 Hz ± 3 Hz
Power Consumption	Maximum power consumption: 950 W Low Power mode: 16 W or less Sleep mode: 7 W or less Standby mode: 65 W or less

Dimensions	❏ Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF:
	   Width 410 × Depth 389[*] × Height 337.5 mm
	
	❏ Epson AcuLaser CX17:
	   Width 410 × Depth 389[*] × Height 318 mm
	
	* When the front cover is closed.

Machine Weight	❏ Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF:
	   15.0 kg
	
	❏ Epson AcuLaser CX17:
	   14.0 kg
	
	Important:
	❏ The weight of paper is not included.
	❏ The weight of the toner cartridges are included.

Items	Description
Space Requirement	❑ Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF: Width 879 × Depth 936.5* mm ❑ Epson AcuLaser CX17: Width 848 × Depth 936.5* mm * When the front cover and rear cover are open.

Print Function

Items	Description
Type	Built-in
Continuous Print Speed	Same as the Copy Function
Print Resolution	Output resolution: 1200 × 2400 dpi Data processing resolution: 600 × 600 dpi
PDL	— (Host-based)
Protocol (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF only)	❑ Epson AcuLaser CX17NF: Ethernet (standard): TCP/IP (lpd, Port9100, WSD) ❑ Epson AcuLaser CX17WF: Ethernet (standard): TCP/IP (lpd, Port9100, WSD) IEEE802.11b/g (standard) **Note:** ❑ WSD stands for Web Services on Devices. ❑ WSD is available only on Windows Vista® or Windows® 7.

Items	Description
Operating System	Standard: GDI driver Microsoft® Windows® XP, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008, Microsoft® Windows Vista®, Microsoft® Windows® 7, Microsoft® Windows® XP x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 x64, Microsoft® Windows Vista® x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 R2 x64, Microsoft® Windows® 7 x64, Mac OS® X 10.4/10.5/10.6 **Important:** For information about the latest supported OS, contact our Customer Support Center.
Connectivity	❏ Epson AcuLaser CX17NF: Standard: Ethernet (100BASE-TX/10BASE-T), USB 1.1/2.0* ❏ Epson AcuLaser CX17WF: Standard: Ethernet (100BASE-TX/10BASE-T), USB 1.1/2.0*, IEEE802.11b/g ❏ Epson AcuLaser CX17: Standard: USB 1.1/2.0* * USB 2.0 is supported by the following: Windows® XP, Windows Server® 2003, Windows Vista®, Windows Server® 2008, Windows® 7, Windows® XP x64, Windows Server® 2003 x64, Windows Vista® x64, Windows Server® 2008 x64, Windows Server® 2008 R2 x64, Windows® 7 x64, and Mac OS® X 10.4/10.5/10.6.

Scan Function

Items	Description
Type	Color scanner
Original Paper Size	Same as the Copy Function
Scanning Resolution	1200 × 1200 dpi, 600 × 600 dpi, 300 × 300 dpi, 200 × 200 dpi
Scanning Halftone	Monochrome : 8 bit Color : 24 bit

Items	Description
Scanning Speed (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF only)	Monochrome : 8 sheets/minute Color : 2.6 sheets/minute (For ITU-T No.1 Chart A4 200 dpi) **Important:** The scanning speed varies depending on documents.

Connectivity	❏ Epson AcuLaser CX17NF:
	   Standard: Ethernet 100BASE-TX/10BASE-T, USB 1.1/2.0*
	
	❏ Epson AcuLaser CX17WF:
	   Standard: Ethernet 100BASE-TX/10BASE-T, USB 1.1/2.0*, IEEE802.11b/g
	
	❏ Epson AcuLaser CX17:
	   Standard: USB 1.1/2.0*
	
	* USB 2.0 is supported by the following:
	Windows® XP, Windows Server® 2003, Windows Vista®, Windows Server® 2008, Windows® 7, Windows® XP x64, Windows Server® 2003 x64, Windows Vista® x64, Windows Server® 2008 x64, Windows Server® 2008 R2 x64, Windows® 7 x64, and Mac OS® X 10.4/10.5/10.6.

Scan to PC	Protocol (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF only): TCP/IP (SMB, FTP) Operating System: Microsoft® Windows® XP, Microsoft® Windows Vista®, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008, Microsoft® Windows® 7, Microsoft® Windows XP x64, Microsoft® Windows Vista® x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 R2 x64, Microsoft® Windows® 7 x64, Mac OS® X 10.4/10.5/10.6 **Important:** For information about the latest supported OS, refer to the Epson Web site. File Format: TIFF JPEG PDF (v 1.3)
Scan to USB Memory	File Format: TIFF, JPEG, PDF

Items	Description
Scan to e-mail (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF only)	Protocol: TCP/IP (SMTP, POP3) File Format: Monochrome binary: TIFF, PDF Gray scale/full color: TIFF, JPEG, PDF

Fax Function (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)

Items	Description
Send Document Size	Document glass: Maximum: A4/Letter Automatic document feeder: Maximum: Legal
Recording Paper Size	Maximum: Legal Minimum: A4/Letter
Transmission Time	3 seconds **Important:** When transmitting an A4 size 700-character document in the standard quality (8 x 3.85 lines/mm) and high speed mode (28.8 kbps or above: JBIG). This is only the transmission speed for image information and does not include the controlling time for the communication. Note that the actual transmission time depends on the content of documents, the machine that the recipient uses, and the status of the communication line.
Transmission Mode	ITU-T Super G3/G3 ECM/G3

Items	Description
Scanning Resolution	Standard: 203 × 98 dpi (8 × 3.85 dots/mm) Fine: 203 × 196 dpi (8 × 7.7 dots/mm) Super Fine: 203 × 392 dpi (8 × 15.4 dots/mm) Ultra Fine: 406 × 392 dpi (16 × 15.4 dots/mm)
Coding Method	MH, MR, MMR, JBIG
Transmission Speed	G3: 33.6/31.2/28.8/26.4/24.0/21.6/19.2/16.8/14.4/12.0/9.6/7.2/4.8/2.4kbps
No. of Fax Lines	PSTN, PBX. Leased line (3.4KHz/2-wire) RJ-11, 1 line

Direct Fax Function (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)

Items	Description
Document Size	A4, Letter, Folio, Legal
Transmission Speed	Same as the Fax Function
Transmission Resolution	Standard: 203 × 98 dpi (8 × 3.85 dots/mm) High Quality: 203 × 196 dpi (8 × 7.7 dots/mm) Superfine: 203 × 392 dpi (8 × 15.4 dots/mm) Super-High Image Quality: 406 × 392 dpi (16 × 15.4 dots/mm)
Applicable Lines	Same as the Fax Function

Items	Description
Operating System	Microsoft® Windows® XP, Microsoft® Windows Vista®, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008, Microsoft® Windows® 7, Microsoft® Windows® XP x64, Microsoft® Windows Vista® x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 R2 x64, Microsoft® Windows® 7 x64, Mac OS® X 10.4/10.5/10.6 **Important:** For information about the latest supported OS, refer to the Epson Web site.

Chapter 2
Basic Operation

Main Components

This section provides an overview of your printer.

Front View

Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF
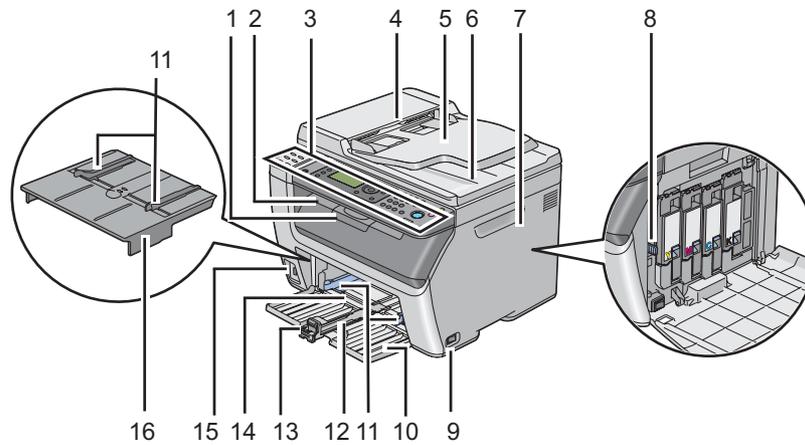
1	Output Tray Extension	2	Center Output Tray
3	Operator Panel	4	Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)
5	Document Feeder Tray	6	Document Output Tray
7	Toner Access Cover	8	Print Head Cleaning Rod
9	Power Switch	10	Front Cover
11	Paper Width Guides	12	Slide Bar
13	Length Guide	14	Multipurpose feeder (MPF)
15	Front USB Port	16	Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)

Epson AcuLaser CX17
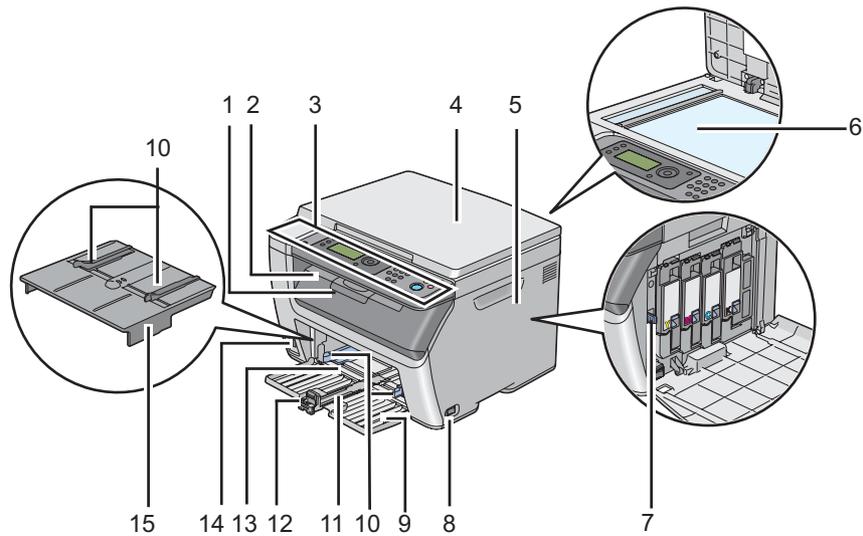
1	Output Tray Extension	2	Center Output Tray
3	Operator Panel	4	Document Cover
5	Toner Access Cover	6	Document Glass
7	Print Head Cleaning Rod	8	Power Switch
9	Front Cover	10	Paper Width Guides
11	Slide Bar	12	Length Guide
13	Multipurpose feeder (MPF)	14	Front USB Port
15	Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)		

Rear View

Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF
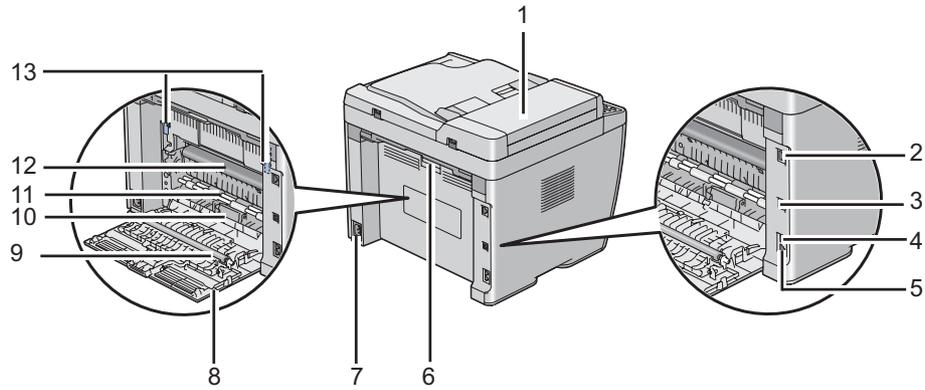
1	ADF Cover	2	Ethernet Port
3	USB Port	4	Wall Jack Connector
5	Phone Connector	6	Rear Cover Handle
7	Power Connector	8	Rear Cover
9	Transfer Roller	10	Paper Chute
11	Paper Feed Roller	12	Transfer Drum
13	Levers		

Epson AcuLaser CX17
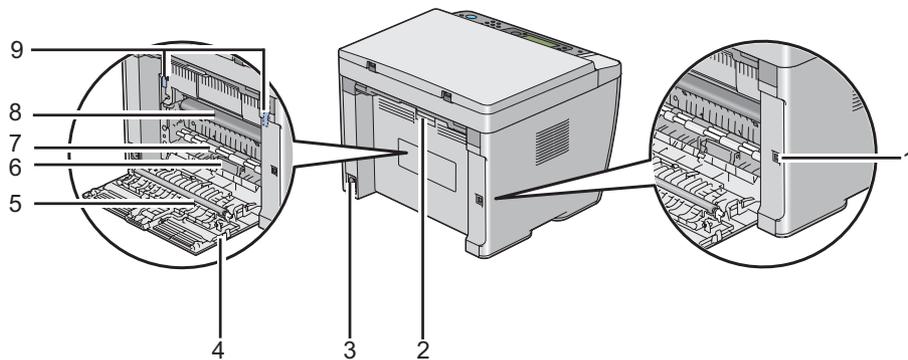
1	USB Port	2	Rear Cover Handle
3	Power Connector	4	Rear Cover
5	Transfer Roller	6	Paper Chute
7	Paper Feed Roller	8	Transfer Drum
9	Levers		

Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)
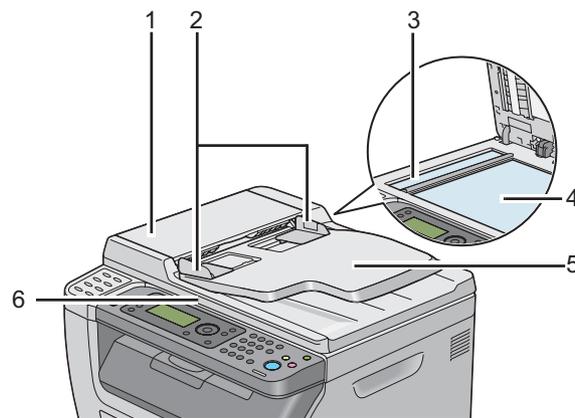
1	ADF Cover
2	Document Guides
3	ADF Glass
4	Document Glass
5	Document Feeder Tray
6	Document Cover

Operator Panel

The operator panel has a 4-line by 28-character liquid crystal display (LCD), light-emitting diodes (LED), control buttons, one-touch buttons, and numeric keypad, which allow you to control the printer. (The one-touch buttons are available only on the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF.)

* This button/LED is available only on the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF.

1*	One-touch buttons	Calls up the stored Fax number registered in the Address Book. The first eight fax numbers in the Address Book are assigned to the buttons in row order, starting from the top corner.
2	❧ (**Copy**) button/LED	Moves to the top level of the Copy menu.
3	❧ (**Scan**) button/LED	Moves to the top level of the Scan menu.
4	▲ ▼ buttons	Moves a cursor or highlight up or down.
5	◀ ▶ buttons	Moves a cursor or highlight left or right.
6*	**Job Status** button/LED	Moves to the top level of the Job Status menu.
7	**System** button/LED	Moves to the top level of the System menu.
8	Numeric keypad	Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF ❏ Enters characters and numbers. Epson AcuLaser CX17 ❏ Enters numbers.
9*	**Redial/Pause** button	❏ Re-dials a telephone number. ❏ Inserts a pause during dialing.
10*	**Speed Dial** button	Calls up a stored telephone number.

11	✐ (**Clear All**) button	Resets the current setting, and returns to the top level of each service menu.
12	⊘ (**Energy Saver**) button/LED	Lights up in the Sleep mode. Press this button to exit the Sleep mode.
13	⊖ (**Stop**) button	Cancels the current processing or pending job.
14	◇ (**Start**) button	Starts a job.
15	**Error** LED	Lights up when the printer has an error.
16	**Data** LED	Lights up for incoming, outgoing, or pending jobs.
17 *	**C** (**Clear**) button	Deletes characters and numbers.
18	**# button** (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF only)	Enters characters "(space) & ( ) ".
	C (**Clear**) button (Epson AcuLaser CX17 only)	Deletes numbers.
19 *	**Address Book** button	Pressing this button at the Fax menu, moves to the top level of the Address Book menu.
20	⊙ button	Confirms the entry of values.
21	⌐ (**Back**) button	Returns to the previous screen.
22	LCD Panel	Displays various settings, instructions, and error messages.
23	♦ (**Print**) button/LED	Moves to the top level of the Print menu.
24 *	♦ (**Fax**) button/LED	Moves to the top level of the Fax menu.
25	**Color Mode** button	Switches the color mode.
26	**B&W**/**Color** LED	Lights up to indicate which color mode is selected.

* This button/LED is available only on the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF.

Note:
❏ *Moving to a different menu or returning to a previous screen cancels the current entry or setting. Make sure to press the ⊙ button to save the current entry or setting.*

❏ *For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF, see "Using the Numeric Keypad" on page 299 for details on how to use the numeric keypad to enter alphanumeric characters.*

Setting Initial Settings on the Operator Panel

You need to set the printer language, clock date, and time when you turn on the printer for the first time. (Clock date and time are available only on the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF.)

When you turn on the printer, a wizard appears on the LCD panel. Follow the step below to set the initial settings.

Note:
If you do not start configuring the initial settings, Select Function *appears on the LCD panel in three minutes. After that, you can set the following initial setup by enabling* Power On Wizard *on the operator panel if needed.*
For more information about the operator panel, see "Understanding the Printer Menus" on page 250.

For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF

1. Select the language you want to use on the operator panel, and then press the (ok) button.

2. Press the (ok) button to start setting the region.

3. Select your region, and then press the (ok) button.

4. Select the appropriate time zone, and then press the (ok) button.

5. Specify the current date, and then press the (ok) button.

6. Specify the current time, and then press the (ok) button.

7. Press the (ok) button for fax setup.

    If you want to skip the fax setup, press the ◇ (**Start**) button.

8. Enter your fax number, and then press the (ok) button.

9. Enter a name, and then press the (ok) button.

10. Press the (ok) button to complete the initial settings on the operator panel.

For the Epson AcuLaser CX17

1. Select the language you want to use on the operator panel, and then press the (ok) button.

Printing a Panel Settings Page

The Panel Settings page shows current settings for the operator panel menus.

The Operator Panel

Note:
The reports and lists are all printed in English.

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Report ⁄ List, and then press the (OK) button.

3. Select Panel Settings, and then press the (OK) button.

    The Panel Settings page is printed.

The Printer Setting Utility

The following procedure uses Microsoft® Windows® XP as an example.

Note:
The reports and lists are all printed in English.

1. Click **start** — **All Programs** — **EPSON** — your printer — **Printer Setting Utility**.

    Note:
    *The window to select a printer appears in this step, when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.*

    The Printer Setting Utility appears.

2. Click the **Printer Settings Report** tab.

3. Select **Reports** from the list at the left side of the page.

    The **Reports** page is displayed.

4. Click the **Panel Settings** button.

The Panel Settings page is printed.

Power Saver Mode

The printer has a power saving feature which reduces power consumption during periods of inactivity. This feature operates in two modes: Low Power mode and Sleep mode. As delivered, the printer switches to the Low Power mode five minutes after the last job is finished. The printer then switches to the Sleep mode after another six minutes of inactivity. When the printer is in the Low Power mode, the LCD backlight turns off. In the Sleep mode, the ⊘ (**Energy Saver**) button lights up. The LCD panel goes blank and displays nothing.

The factory default settings of five minutes (Low Power mode) and six minutes (Sleep mode) are changeable within the range of 5 to 30 minutes (Low Power mode) and 1 to 6 minutes (Sleep mode). The printer returns to the ready-to-print state in about 25 seconds when re-activated.

See Also:

Exiting the Power Saver Mode

The printer automatically exits the Power Saver mode when it receives a job from a computer. To manually exit the Low Power mode, press any button on the operator panel. To exit the Sleep mode, press the ⊘ (**Energy Saver**) button.

Note:
*When the printer is in the Sleep mode, all buttons on the operator panel except for the ⊘ (**Energy Saver**) button do not function. To use the buttons on the operator panel, press the ⊘ (**Energy Saver**) button to exit the Power Saver mode.*

See Also:

Chapter 3

Printer Management Software

Print and Scan Drivers

To access all of your printer's features, install the print and scan drivers from the *Software Disc*.

❏ The print driver enables your computer and printer to communicate and provides access to your printer features.

❏ The scan driver enables you to scan images directly to your personal computer and place scanned images directly into an application via USB or the network. (The network feature is available only on the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF.)

The scan driver is installed with your print driver. It is available for Microsoft® Windows® and Mac OS® X.

See Also:
❏ *"Installing Print Driver on Computers Running Windows" on page 53*

❏ *"Installing Print Driver on Computers Running Mac OS X" on page 103*

EpsonNet Config (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)

This section provides information on EpsonNet Config.

EpsonNet Config is a hyper text transfer protocol (HTTP)-based web page service that is accessed through your web browser.

Using the EpsonNet Config you can confirm the printer status, and change the printer configuration options easily. Anyone on your network can access the printer using the EpsonNet Config. In administrative mode you can change the configuration of the printer, set up your fax directories, and manage your printer settings without leaving your computer.

Note:
❏ *Users who are not given passwords by the administrator can still view the configuration settings in user mode. They will not be able to save or apply any changes to the current configuration and settings.*

❏ *For details on the menu items of EpsonNet Config, refer to the Help on the Software Disc.*

Creating an Administrative Password

1. Launch your web browser.

2. Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.

3. Click the **Properties** tab.

4. In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **Administrator Settings**.

5. Select **Enabled** for **Administrator Mode**.

6. In the **Administrator Login ID** field, enter a name for the administrator.

   Note:
   The default ID and password are both blank (NULL).

7. In the **Administrator Password** and **Re-enter Password** fields, enter a password for the administrator.

8. In the **Maximum Login Attempts** field, enter the number of login attempts allowed.

9. Click **Apply**.

   Your new password has been set and anyone with the administrator name and password can log in and change the printer configuration and settings.

Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)

The Printer Setting Utility allows you to view or specify the system settings. You can also diagnose the system settings by using the Printer Setting Utility.

The Printer Setting Utility consists of the **Printer Settings Report**, **Printer Maintenance**, and **Diagnosis** tabs.

The Printer Setting Utility is installed with your print driver.

Note:
*The **Password** dialog box appears the first time you try to change settings on Printer Setting Utility when* `Panel Lock` *is set on the printer. In this case, enter the password you specified, and click **OK** to apply the settings.*

Status Monitor (Windows Only)

You can check the printer status with Status Monitor. Double-click the Status Monitor printer icon on the taskbar at the bottom right of the screen. The **Printer Selection** window appears, which displays the printer name, printer connection port, printer status, and model name. Check the column **Status** to know the current status of your printer.

Settings button: Displays the **Settings** window and allows you to modify the Status Monitor settings.

Click the name of the desired printer listed on the **Printer Selection** window. The **Printer Status** window appears.

The **Printer Status** window alerts you when there is a warning or when an error occurs, for example, when a paper jam occurs or toner is running low.

By default, the **Printer Status** window launches automatically when an error occurs. You can specify the conditions for starting the **Printer Status** window in **Printer Status Window Properties**.

To change the pop-up settings for the **Printer Status** window:

1. Right-click the Status Monitor printer icon on the taskbar at the bottom right of the screen.

2. Select **Printer Status Window Properties**.

    The **Printer Status Window Properties** window appears.

3. Select the type of the pop-up and then click **OK**.

You can also check the toner level of your printer and the job information on the **Printer Status** window.

The Status Monitor is installed with your print driver.

Launcher (Windows Only)

Using the **Launcher-Btype** window, you can open the **Status Window**, **Printer Setting Utility**, **Address Book Editor**, and **Express Scan Manager**. (The **Address Book Editor** is available only on the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF.)

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

To open the **Launcher-Btype** window:

1. Click **start** — **All Programs** — **EPSON** — your printer — **Launcher**.

    The **Launcher-Btype** window appears.
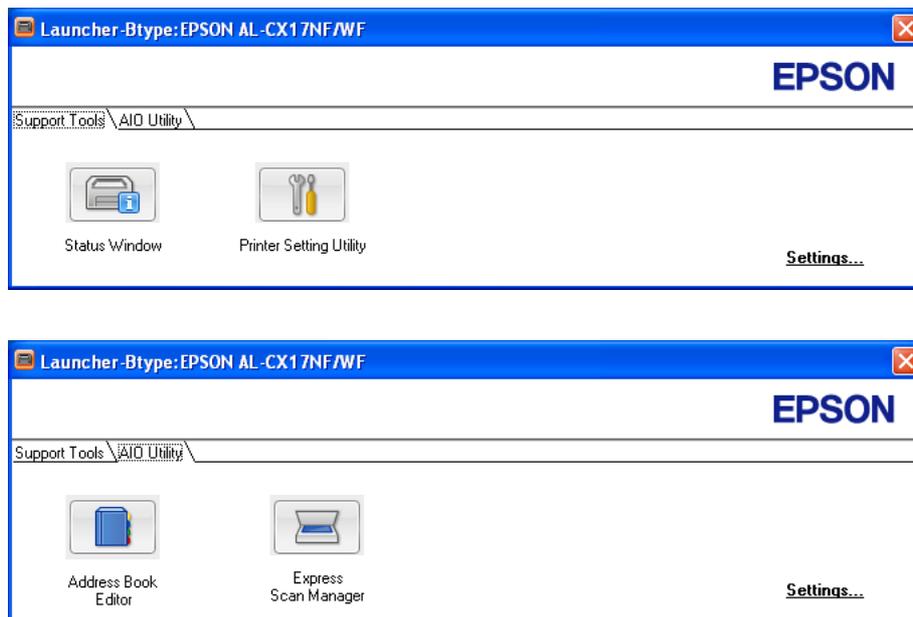
    The **Address Book Editor** is available only on the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF.

2. The **Launcher-Btype** window provides several buttons; **Status Window**, **Printer Setting Utility**, **Address Book Editor**, and **Express Scan Manager**. (The **Address Book Editor** is available only on the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF.)

    To exit, click the **X** button at the top-right of the window.

    For details, click the **Help** button/icon of each application.

Status Window	Opens the Printer Status window. **See Also:** "Status Monitor (Windows Only)" on page 37
Printer Setting Utility	Opens the Printer Setting Utility. **See Also:** "Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)" on page 36
Address Book Editor (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF only)	Opens the Address Book Editor, which allows you to add and edit Address Book entries. **See Also:** "Address Book Editor (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)" on page 39
Express Scan Manager	Opens the Express Scan Manager. **See Also:** "Express Scan Manager" on page 40

The Launcher is installed with your print driver.

Address Book Editor (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)

The Address Book Editor provides a convenient interface for modifying the printer's Address Book entries. With it you can add:

❏ Fax entries

❏ E-Mail entries

❏ Server entries

When you start the software, the Address Book Editor reads the printer's Address Book. You can add, edit, and delete entries. After making changes, you can then save the updated Address Book to the printer or to your computer.

The Address Book Editor is installed with your print driver. It is available for Windows and Mac OS X.

Express Scan Manager

The Express Scan Manager handles scan jobs sent from the printer to your computer via USB. When scan jobs are sent from the printer to the computer, Express Scan Manager automatically manages the scan jobs.

Before scanning to your computer, start Express Scan Manager and configure the output destination of the scanned image files.

Click **Open the image file** to display scanned files saved in the specified destination after scanning.

The Express Scan Manager is installed with your print driver. It is available for Windows and Mac OS X.

Note:
When you separately install the Express Scan Manager from the Software Disc, you also need to install the scan driver from the Software Disc.

See Also:
"Scanning From the Operator Panel" on page 177

Chapter 4

Printer Connection and Software Installation

Overview of Network Setup and Configuration (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/ CX17WF Only)

To set up and configure the network:

1. Connect the printer to the network using the recommended hardware and cables.

2. Turn on the printer and the computer.

3. Print the System Settings page and keep it for referencing network settings.

4. Install the driver software on the computer from the *Software Disc*. For information on driver installation, see the section in this chapter for the specific operating system you are using.

5. Configure the printer's TCP/IP address, which is required to identify the printer on the network.

    ❏ Microsoft® Windows® operating systems: Run the Installer on the *Software Disc* to automatically set the printer's Internet Protocol (IP) address if you connect the printer to an established TCP/IP network. You can also manually set the printer's IP address on the operator panel.

    ❏ Mac OS® X systems: Manually set the printer's TCP/IP address on the operator panel. To use a wireless connection, also configure wireless settings on the operator panel. (A wireless connection is available only on the Epson AcuLaser CX17WF.)

6. Print a System Settings page to verify the new settings.

Note:
The reports and lists are all printed in English.

See Also:
"Printing a System Settings Page" on page 149

Connecting Your Printer

Your printer interconnection cables must meet the following requirements:

Connection Type	Connection Specifications
Ethernet[*1]	10 Base-T/100 Base-TX compatible
USB	USB 1.1/2.0 compatible
Wireless[*2]	IEEE 802.11b/802.11g
Wall jack connector[*1]	RJ11
Phone connector[*1]	RJ11

[*1] Available only on the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF.

[*2] Available only on the Epson AcuLaser CX17WF.
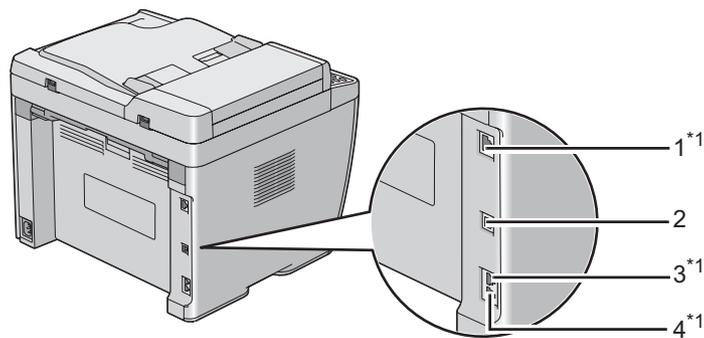
1	Ethernet Port[*1]	🖧
2	USB Port	⬷
3	Wall Jack Connector[*1]	LINE
4	Phone Connector[*1]	PHONE

[*1] Available only on the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF.

Connecting Printer to Computer or Network

Connect the printer via Ethernet or USB. (A network connection is available only on the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF.) Hardware and cabling requirements vary for the different connection methods. Ethernet cable and hardware are not included with your printer and must be purchased separately.

The available features for each connection type are shown in the following table.

Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF

Connection Type	Available Features
USB	When connected via USB you can: ❏ Instruct print jobs from a computer. ❏ Scan and print an image into an application. ❏ Scan and print an image to a folder on the computer. ❏ Use the Address Book Editor to manage Address Book entries.
Ethernet	When connected via Ethernet you can: ❏ Instruct print jobs from a computer on the network. ❏ Scan and print an image to a computer on the network. ❏ Scan and print an image to an FTP server. ❏ Scan to email. ❏ Use EpsonNet Config to manage Address Book entries.

Epson AcuLaser CX17

Connection Type	Available Features
USB	You can: ❏ Instruct print jobs from a computer. ❏ Scan and print an image into an application. ❏ Scan and print an image to a folder on the computer.

USB Connection

If your printer is attached to a network instead of your computer, skip this section and go to "Network Connection (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)" on page 45.

The following operating systems support USB connection:

❏ Windows XP

❏ Windows XP 64-bit Edition

❏ Windows Server® 2003

❏ Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition

❏ Windows Server 2008

❏ Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

❏ Windows Server 2008 R2

❏ Windows Vista®

❏ Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

❏ Windows 7

❏ Windows 7 64-bit Edition

❏ Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6

To attach the printer to a computer:

1. Ensure that the printer, computer, and any other attached devices are turned off and unplugged from the power source/outlet.

2. Connect one end of a USB cable into the USB port at the rear of the printer, and the other end to a USB port of the computer.
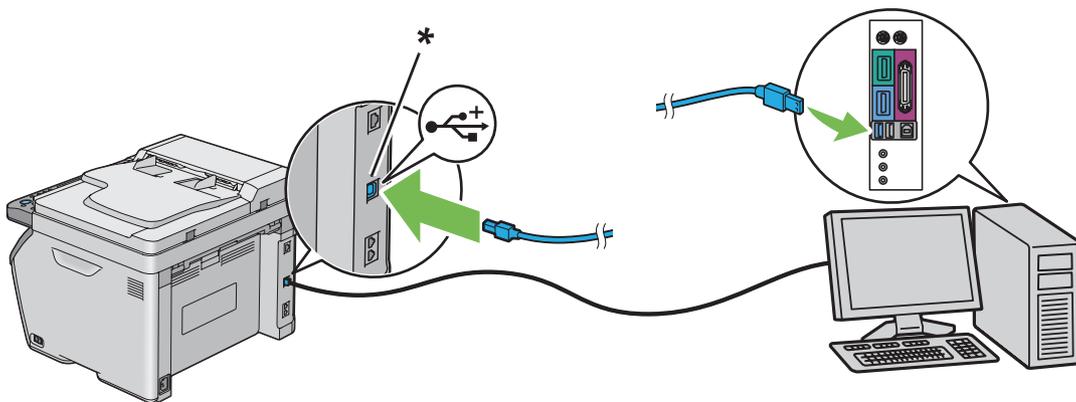
* USB port

Note:
Do not connect the printer USB cable to the USB connector available on the keyboard.

Network Connection (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)

To connect the printer to a network:

1. Ensure that the printer, computer, and any other connected devices have been turned off and all cables have been disconnected.

2. Connect one end of an Ethernet cable into the Ethernet port at the rear of the printer, and the other end to a LAN drop or hub.
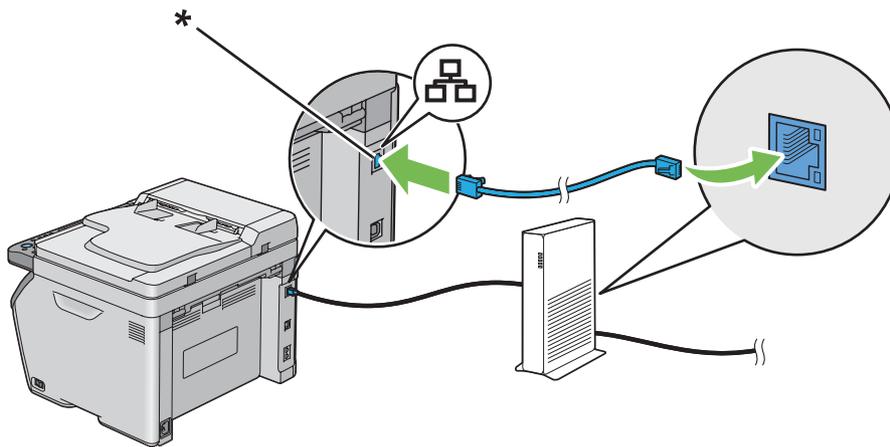
* Ethernet port

Note:
Connect the Ethernet cable, only if you need to setup a wired connection.

See Also:
"Configuring Wireless Settings (Epson AcuLaser CX17WF Only)" on page 57

Setting the IP Address (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)

TCP/IP and IP Addresses

If your computer is on a large network, contact your network administrator for the appropriate TCP/IP addresses and additional system settings information.

If you are creating your own small Local Area Network or connecting the printer directly to your computer using Ethernet, follow the procedure for automatically setting the printer's IP address.

Computers and printers primarily use TCP/IP protocols to communicate over an Ethernet network. With TCP/IP protocols, each printer and computer must have a unique IP address. It is important that the addresses are similar, but not the same; only the last digit needs to be different. For example, your printer can have the address 192.168.1.2 while your computer has the address 192.168.1.3. Another device can have the address 192.168.1.4.

Many networks have a Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) server. A DHCP server automatically programs an IP address into every computer and printer on the network that is configured to use DHCP. A DHCP server is built into most cable and Digital Subscriber Line (DSL) routers. If you use a cable or DSL router, see your router's documentation for information on IP addressing.

Automatically Setting the Printer's IP Address

If the printer is connected to a small established TCP/IP network without a DHCP server, use the installer on the *Software Disc* to detect or assign an IP address to your printer. For further instructions, insert the *Software Disc* into your computer's CD/DVD drive. After the Installer launches, follow the prompts for installation.

Note:
For the automatic installer to function, the printer must be connected to an established TCP/IP network.

Dynamic Methods of Setting the Printer's IP Address

There are two protocols available for dynamically setting the printer's IP address:

❏ DHCP (enabled by default)

❏ AutoIP

You can turn on/off both protocols using the operator panel, or use EpsonNet Config to turn on/off DHCP.

Note:
*You can print a report that includes the printer's IP address. On the operator panel, press the **System** button, select* Report / List, *press the* (ok) *button, select* System Settings, *and then press the* (ok) *button. The IP address is listed on the System Settings page.*

Using the Operator Panel

To turn on/off either the DHCP or AutoIP protocol:

1. On the operator panel, press the **System** button.

2. Select Admin Menu, and then press the (ok) button.

3. Select Network, and then press the (ok) button.

4. Select TCP/IP, and then press the (ok) button.

5. Select IPv4, and then press the (ok) button.

6. Select Get IP Address, and then press the (ok) button.

7. Select DHCP/AutoIP, and then press the (ok) button.

Using EpsonNet Config

To turn on/off the DHCP protocol:

1. Launch your web browser.

2. Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.

3. Select **Properties**.

4. Select **TCP/IP** from the **Protocol Settings** folder on the left navigation panel.

5. In the **IP Address Mode** field, select the **DHCP/Autonet** option.

6. Click the **Apply** button.

Assigning an IP Address (for IPv4 Mode)

Note:
❏ *When you assign an IP address manually in **IPv6** mode, use the EpsonNet Config. To display the EpsonNet Config, use the link local address. To check a link local address, see "Printing and Checking the System Settings Page" on page 51.*

❏ *Assigning an IP address is considered as an advanced function and is normally done by a system administrator.*

❏ *Depending on the address class, the range of the IP address assigned may be different. On Class A, for example, an IP address in the range from* 0.0.0.0 *to* 127.255.255.255 *will be assigned. For assignment of IP addresses, contact your system administrator.*

You can assign the IP address by using the operator panel or using the Printer Setting Utility.

The Operator Panel

1. Turn on the printer.

   Ensure that Select Function message appears on the LCD panel.

2. On the operator panel, press the **System** button.

3. Select Admin Menu, and then press the (ok) button.

4. Select Network, and then press the (ok) button.

5. Select TCP/IP, and then press the (ok) button.

6. Select IPv4, and then press the (ok) button.

7. Select Get IP Address, and then press the (ok) button.

8. Ensure that Panel is selected, and then press the ᴊ (**Back**) button.

9. Ensure that Get IP Address is selected.

10. Select IP Address, and then press the (ok) button.

    The cursor is located at the first three digits of the IP address.

11. Enter the value of the IP address using the numeric keypad.

12. Press the ▶ button.

The next three digits are highlighted.

13. Repeat steps 11 to 12 to enter all of the digits in the IP address, and then press the (ok) button.

14. Press the ⟳ (**Back**) button, and then ensure that IP Address is selected.

15. Select Subnet Mask, and then press the (ok) button.

The cursor is located at the first three digits of the subnet mask.

16. Enter the value of the subnet mask using the numeric keypad.

17. Press the ▶ button.

The next three digits are highlighted.

18. Repeat steps 16 to 17 to set subnet mask, and then press the (ok) button.

19. Press the ⟳ (**Back**) button, and then ensure that Subnet Mask is selected.

20. Select Gateway Address, and then press the (ok) button.

The cursor is located at the first three digits of the gateway address.

21. Enter the value of the gateway address using the numeric keypad.

22. Press the ▶ button.

The next three digits are highlighted.

23. Repeat steps 21 to 22 to set gateway address, and then press the (ok) button.

24. Turn off and turn on the printer.

See Also:
"Operator Panel" on page 30

The Printer Setting Utility

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

Note:
When you use IPv6 mode for network printing, you cannot use the Printer Setting Utility to assign an IP address.

1. Click **start** — **All Programs** — **EPSON** — your printer — **Printer Setting Utility**.

   Note:
   *The window to select a printer appears in this step, when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.*

   The Printer Setting Utility appears.

2. Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.

3. Select **TCP/IP Settings** from the list at the left side of the page.

   The **TCP/IP Settings** page is displayed.

4. Select **Panel** from **IP Address Mode**, and then enter the values in **IP Address**, **Subnet Mask**, and **Gateway Address**.

5. Click the **Restart printer to apply new settings** button to take effect.

The IP address is assigned to your printer. To verify the setting, display the web browser on any computer connected to the network and enter the IP address into the address bar on the browser. If the IP address is set up correctly, the EpsonNet Config displays in your browser.

You can also assign the IP address to the printer when installing the print drivers with installer. When you use the network installation feature, and the `Get IP Address` is set to `DHCP/AutoIP` on the operator panel menu, you can set the IP address from `0.0.0.0` to the desired IP address on the printer selection window.

Verifying the IP Settings

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

Note:
The reports and lists are all printed in English.

1. Print the System Settings page.

2. Look under the **IPv4** heading on the System Settings page to ensure that the IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address are appropriate.

To verify if the printer is active on the network, run the ping command in your computer:

1. Click **start**, and select **Run**.

2. Enter **cmd**, and then click **OK**.

    A black window is displayed.

3. Enter **ping xx.xx.xx.xx** (where **xx.xx.xx.xx** is the IP address of your printer), and then press the **Enter** key.

4. Reply from the IP address denotes printer is active on the network.

See Also:
"Printing and Checking the System Settings Page" on page 51

Printing and Checking the System Settings Page

Print the System Settings page and check your printer's IP address.

The Operator Panel

Note:
The reports and lists are all printed in English.

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Report ╱ List, and then press the (ok) button.

3. Select System Settings, and then press the (ok) button.

    The System Settings page is printed.

4. Confirm the IP address next to **IP Address** under **Wired Network**/**Wireless Network** on the System Settings page. If the IP address is **0.0.0.0**, wait for a few minutes to resolve the IP address automatically, and then print the System Settings page again.

If the IP address is not resolved automatically, see "Assigning an IP Address (for IPv4 Mode)" on page 48.

The Printer Setting Utility

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

Note:
The reports and lists are all printed in English.

1. Click **start** — **All Programs** — **EPSON** — your printer — **Printer Setting Utility**.

   Note:
   *The window to select a printer appears in this step, when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.*

   The Printer Setting Utility appears.

2. Click the **Printer Settings Report** tab.

3. Select **Reports** from the list at the left side of the page.

   The **Reports** page is displayed.

4. Click the **System Settings** button.

   The System Settings page is printed.

   If the IP address is **0.0.0.0** (the factory default) or **169.254.xx.xx**, an IP address has not been assigned.

See Also:
"Assigning an IP Address (for IPv4 Mode)" on page 48

Installing Print Driver on Computers Running Windows

Setting Up Printer and Computer Before Using Network Installation Feature (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)

Before installing the print driver on your computer, print the System Settings page to check the IP address of your printer.

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

The Operator Panel

Note:
The reports and lists are all printed in English.

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Report / List, and then press the (ok) button.

3. Select System Settings, and then press the (ok) button.

   The System Settings page is printed.

4. Find the IP address under **Wired Network**/**Wireless Network** on the System Settings page.

   If the IP address is **0.0.0.0**, wait for a few minutes to resolve the IP address automatically, and then print the System Settings page again.

   If the IP address is not resolved automatically, see "Assigning an IP Address (for IPv4 Mode)" on page 48.

The Printer Setting Utility

1. Click **start** — **All Programs** — **EPSON** — your printer — **Printer Setting Utility**.

   Note:
   *The window to select a printer appears in this step, when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.*

   The Printer Setting Utility appears.

2. Click the **Printer Settings Report** tab.

3. Select **TCP/IP Settings** from the list on the left side of the page.

    The **TCP/IP Settings** page appears.

If the IP address shows **0.0.0.0** (the factory default) or **169.254.xx.xx**, an IP address has not been assigned. To assign one for your printer, see "Assigning an IP Address (for IPv4 Mode)" on page 48.

Disabling the Firewall Before Installing Your Printer

Note:
For Windows XP, Service Pack 2 or 3 must be installed.

If you are running one of the following operating systems, you must disable the firewall before installing the printer software:

❏ Windows 7

❏ Windows Vista

❏ Windows Server 2008 R2

❏ Windows Server 2008

❏ Windows XP

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

1. Click **start** — **Help and Support**.

    Note:
    *For Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7 operating systems, if you use **Online Help**, switch to **Offline Help** on **Windows Help and Support** window.*

2. In the **Search** box, enter **firewall** and then press the **Enter** key.

    In the list, click **Turn Windows Firewall on or off** and then follow the instructions on the screen.

    Enable the firewall after the installation of the printer software is complete.

USB Connection Setup

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

1. Insert the *Software Disc* into your computer's CD/DVD drive.

    The **Install Navi** launches.

    Note:
    *If the Software Disc does not automatically launch, click **Start** (**start** for Windows XP) — **All Programs** (for Windows Vista and Windows 7) — **Accessories** (for Windows Vista and Windows 7) — **Run**, and then enter **D:\EPSetup.exe** (where D is the drive letter of your computer's CD/DVD drive), and then click **OK**.*

2. Connect the computer and the printer with the USB cable.

3. Turn on the printer.

    Note:
    *If **Found New Hardware Wizard** appears, click **Cancel**.*

4. Click **Easy Install**.

    The **SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT** appears.

5. If you agree to the terms of the **SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT**, select **Agree** and then click **Next**.

    The **Easy Install Navi** launches.

6. Click **Installing Drivers and Software**.

7. Select **Personal Installation (USB)**, and then click **Next**.

8. Click **Finish** to exit the wizard.

USB Printing

A personal printer is a printer attached to your computer or a print server using a USB cable. If your printer is attached to a network and not your computer, see "Network Connection Setup (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)" on page 56.

Network Connection Setup (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

1. Insert the *Software Disc* into your computer's CD/DVD drive.

   The **Install Navi** launches.

   Note:
   *If the Software Disc does not automatically launch, click **Start** (**start** for Windows XP) — **All Programs** (for Windows Vista and Windows 7) — **Accessories** (for Windows Vista and Windows 7) — **Run**, and then enter **D:\EPSetup.exe** (where D is the drive letter of your computer's CD/DVD drive), and then click **OK**.*

2. Click **Easy Install**.

   The **SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT** appears.

3. If you agree to the terms of the **SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT**, select **Agree** and then click **Next**.

   The **Easy Install Navi** launches.

4. Click **Installing Drivers and Software**.

5. Select **Network Installation**, and then click **Next**.

6. Select the printer you want to install from the printer list, and then click **Next**. If the target printer is not displayed on the list, click **Refresh** to refresh the list or click **Add Printer** to add a printer to the list manually. You may specify the IP address and port name at this point.

   If you have installed this printer on the server computer, select **I am setting up this printer on a server** check box.

   Note:
   *When using AutoIP, **0.0.0.0** is displayed in the installer. Before you can continue, you must enter a valid IP address.*

7. Specify the printer settings, and then click **Next**.

   a   Enter the printer name.

b If you want other users on the network to access this printer, select **Share this printer with other computers on the network**, and then enter a share name that users can identify.

c If you want to set a printer as the default for printing, select the **Set this printer as default for printing** check box.

d If you want to set a printer as the default for scanning, select the **Set this printer as default for scanning** check box.

e If you want to install the fax driver, select the **FAX Driver** check box.

8. Select the software and documentation you want to install, and then click **Install**. You can specify folders in which to install the software and documentation. To change the folders, click **Browse**.

9. Click **Finish** to exit the wizard.

Configuring Wireless Settings (Epson AcuLaser CX17WF Only)

You can configure wireless settings through **Easy Install Navi**.

Important:
❏ *The Wireless LAN feature is unavailable depending on the region you purchased.*

❏ *Be sure to get the SSID and security information from a system administrator in advance when you use other than WPS to configure wireless settings.*

❏ *Ensure that the Ethernet cable has been disconnected from the printer before you configure the wireless settings.*

The specifications of wireless setting function are described below:

Item	Specification
Connectivity	Wireless
Connectivity Standard	IEEE 802.11b/g compliant
Bandwidth	2.4 GHz
Data Transfer Rate	IEEE 802.11b mode: 11, 5.5, 2, 1 Mbps
	IEEE 802.11g mode: 54, 48, 36, 24, 18, 12, 9, 6 Mbps

Item	Specification
Security	64 (40-bit key)/ 128 (104- bit key) WEP, WPA- PSK (TKIP, AES), WPA2-PSK (AES) (IEEE802.1x attestation function of WPA 1x non-corresponds)
Certifications	Wi-Fi, WPA2.0 (Personal)
Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS)	Push Button Configuration (PBC), Personal Identification Number (PIN)

You can select a method to configure a wireless setting from the following:

Wizard Setup Through USB Connection	
Advanced Setup Through	Ethernet connection
	Operator Panel
	EpsonNet Config
	WPS-PIN[*1]
	WPS-PBC[*2]

[*1] WPS-PIN (Wi-Fi® Protected Setup-Personal Identification Number) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by entering PIN code in the printer and computer. This setting, performed through access point, is available only when the access points of your wireless router supports WPS.

[*2] WPS-PBC (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Push Button Configuration) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by pressing the button provided on the access point via wireless routers, and then performing WPS-PBC setting on the operator panel. This setting is available only when the access point supports WPS.

Using Wizard Setup to Configure Wireless Settings

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

1. Insert the *Software Disc* into your computer's CD/DVD drive.

    The **Install Navi** launches.

    Note:
    *If the Software Disc does not automatically launch, click **Start** (**start** for Windows XP) — **All Programs** (for Windows Vista and Windows 7) — **Accessories** (for Windows Vista and Windows 7) — **Run**, and then enter **D:\EPSetup.exe** (where D is the drive letter of your computer's CD/DVD drive), and then click **OK**.*

2. Click **Easy Install**.

The **SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT** appears.

3. If you agree to the terms of the **SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT**, select **Agree** and then click **Next**.

    The **Easy Install Navi** launches.

4. Click **Start Setup**.

5. Click **Connect Your Printer**.

    The connection type selection screen appears.

6. Select **Wireless Connection**, and then click **Next**.

    The setting method selection screen appears.

7. Ensure that **Wizard** is selected, and then click **Next**.
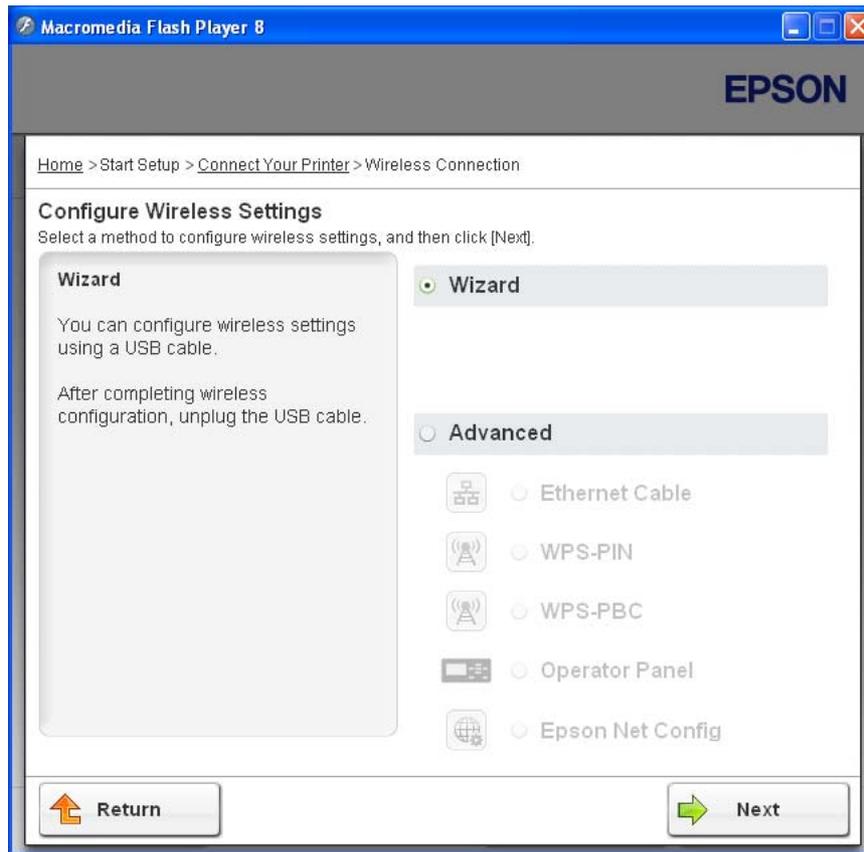
8. Follow the on-screen instructions to connect the USB cable and perform other setup until the **Printer Setup Utility** screen appears.

    Note:
    If **Found New Hardware Wizard** *appears, click* **Cancel**.

9. Enter the SSID.
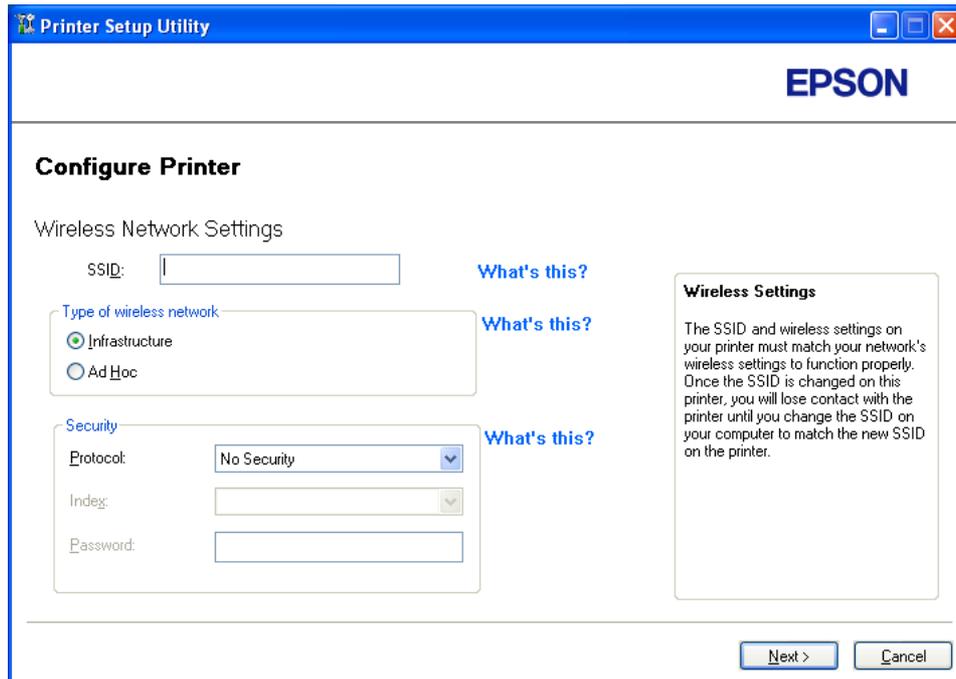
10. Select **Type of wireless network**.

11. Configure the security setting, and then click **Next**.

    The "IP Address Settings" screen appears.

12. Select **IP Mode** depending on your network scheme.

    When **IPv4** is selected, configure the following:

a   Select **Type**.

b   If you have selected **Use Manual Address** from **Type**, enter the following items:

    ❏   **IP Address** of your printer
    ❏   **Subnet Mask**
    ❏   **Gateway Address**

    When **Dual Stack** is selected, configure the following:

a Configure **IPv4 Settings**.

b If you have selected the **Use Manual Address** check box under **IPv6 Settings**, enter the
   following items:

❏ **IP Address** of your printer
❏ **Gateway Address**

13. Click **Next**.

The "FAX Settings" screen appears.

14. Configure the fax settings if necessary.

    Note:
    If you will not use the fax feature, select the **I don't use FAX functionality** *check box.*

15. Click **Next**.

16. Ensure that the wireless settings are displayed, and then click **Apply**.
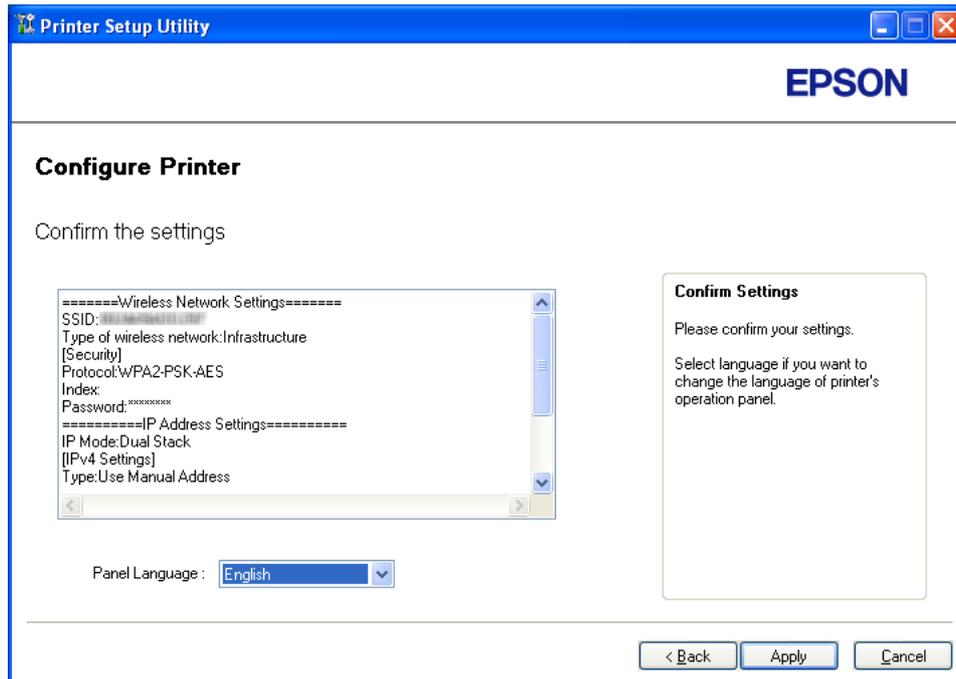
17. Click **Yes** to restart your printer.
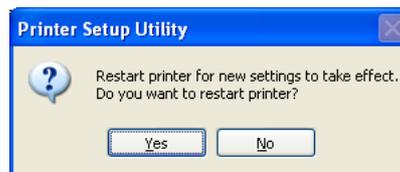
The "Configuration Complete" screen appears.
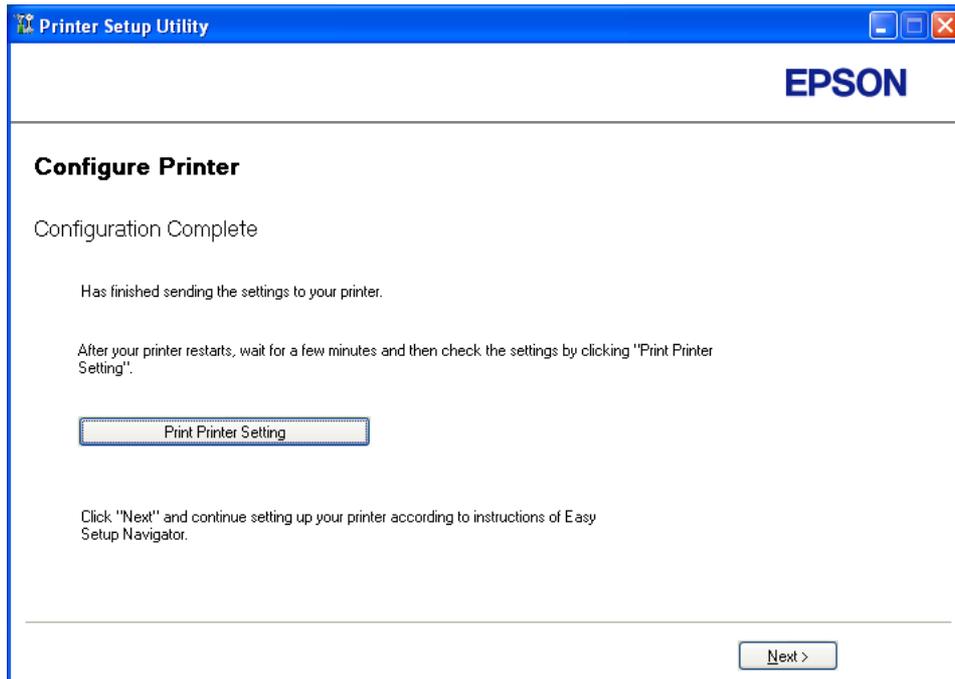
18. Wait a few minutes until the printer restarts to establish the wireless network.

    Note:
    *If **Found New Hardware Wizard** appears, click **Cancel**.*

19. Click **Print Printer Setting**.

20. Confirm that "Link Quality" is shown as "Good", "Acceptable" or "Low" on the report.

    Note:
    *When "Link Quality" is "No Reception", check if the wireless settings are correctly configured. To reconfigure the wireless settings, click **Next** on the "Configuration Complete" screen and then click **Return**.*

21. Click **Next**.

22. Follow the on-screen instructions until the "Check Setup" screen appears.

23. Confirm there are no errors displayed on the LCD panel, and then click **Start Installation**.

If you see any errors, click **Trouble Shooting Guide** and follow the instruction.
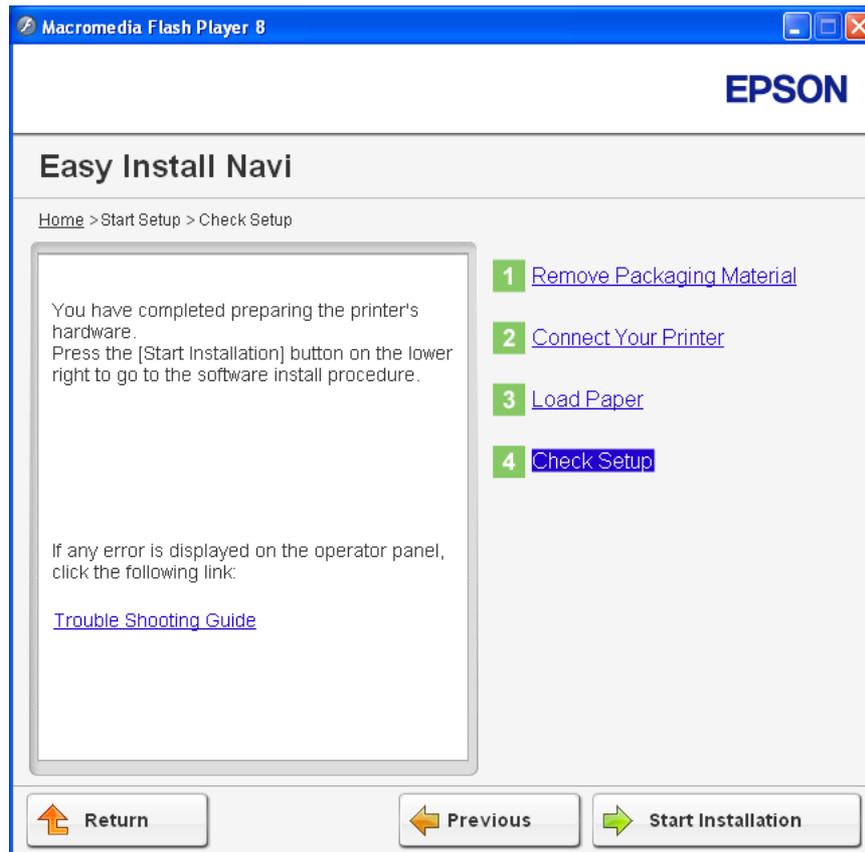
24. Check if the printer to be installed is listed in the "Select Printer" screen, and then click **Next**.

    Note:
    If the printer to be installed is not listed in the "Select Printer" screen, try the following steps:

    ❏ *Click **Refresh** to update the information.*

    ❏ *Click **Add Printer**, and then enter the details of the printer manually.*

25. Select the required items on the "Enter Printer Settings" screen, and then click **Next**.

26. Select the software to be installed, and then click **Install**.

27. Click **Finish** to exit this tool.

    The wireless configuration is complete.

Using Advanced Setup to Configure Wireless Settings

To use the Advanced setup, display the Configure Wireless Settings screen.

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

Displaying Configure Wireless Settings Screen

1. Insert the *Software Disc* into your computer's CD/DVD drive.

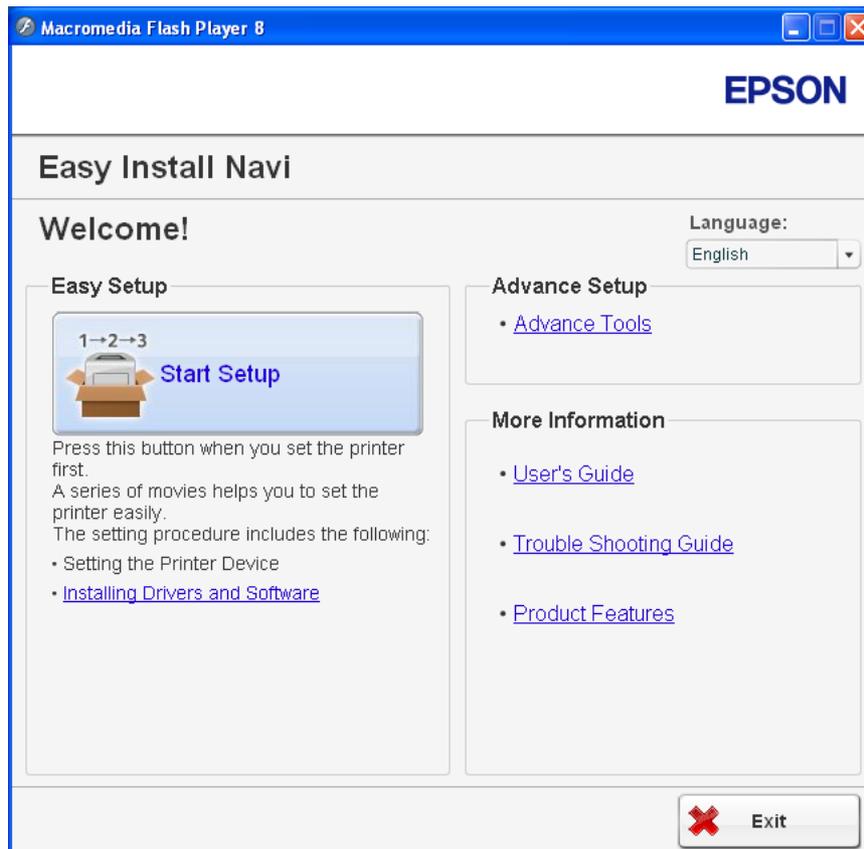   The **Install Navi** launches.

    Note:
    *If the Software Disc does not automatically launch, click **Start** (**start** for Windows XP) — **All Programs** (for Windows Vista and Windows 7) — **Accessories** (for Windows Vista and Windows 7) — **Run**, and then enter **D:\EPSetup.exe** (where D is the drive letter of your computer's CD/DVD drive), and then click **OK**.*

2. Click **Easy Install**.

    The **SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT** appears.

3. If you agree to the terms of the **SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT**, select **Agree** and then click **Next**.

The **Easy Install Navi** launches.
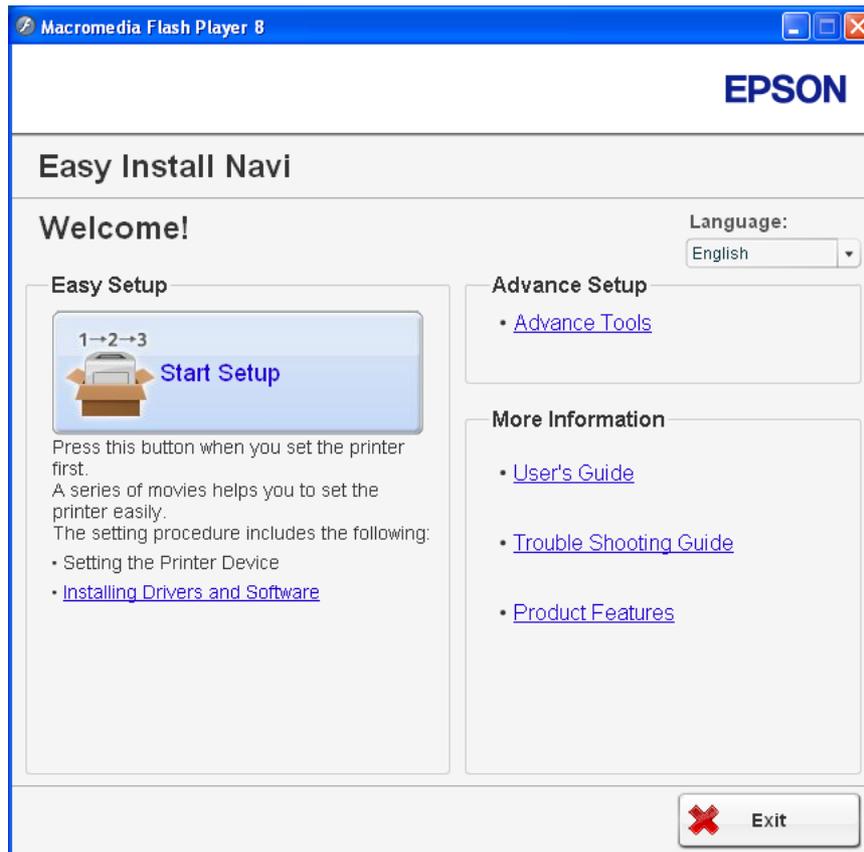
4. Click **Start Setup**.

5. Click **Connect Your Printer**.

6. Select **Wireless Connection**, and then click **Next**.

   The setting method selection screen appears.

7. Select **Advanced**.
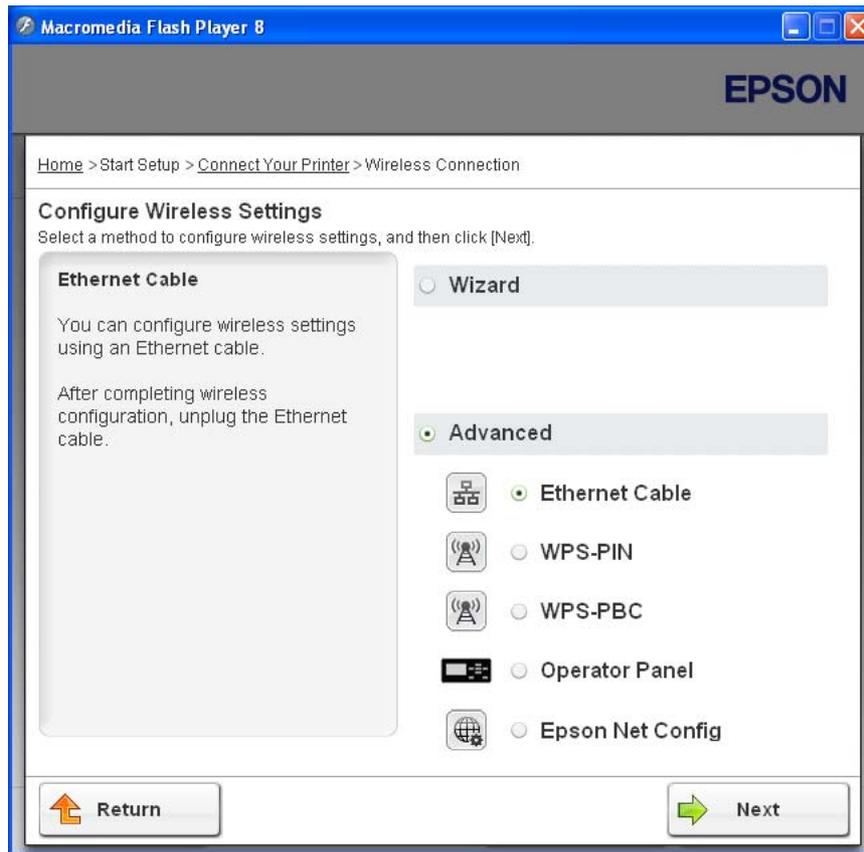
Select a connection method from the following

❏ "Ethernet Cable" on page 69

❏ "WPS-PIN" on page 76

❏ "WPS-PBC" on page 77

❏ "Operator Panel" on page 79

❏ "EpsonNet Config" on page 80

Ethernet Cable

1. Select **Ethernet Cable**, and then click **Next**.

2. Follow the on-screen instructions, and then click **Next**.

The **Printer Setup Utility** screen appears.

3. Select the printer to be configured in the "Select Printer" screen, and then click **Next**.

    Note:
    If the printer to be configured is not listed in the "Select Printer" screen, try the following steps:

    ❏ *Click **Refresh** to update the information.*

    ❏ *Click **Enter IP Address**, and then enter the IP address of your printer.*

4. Enter the SSID.
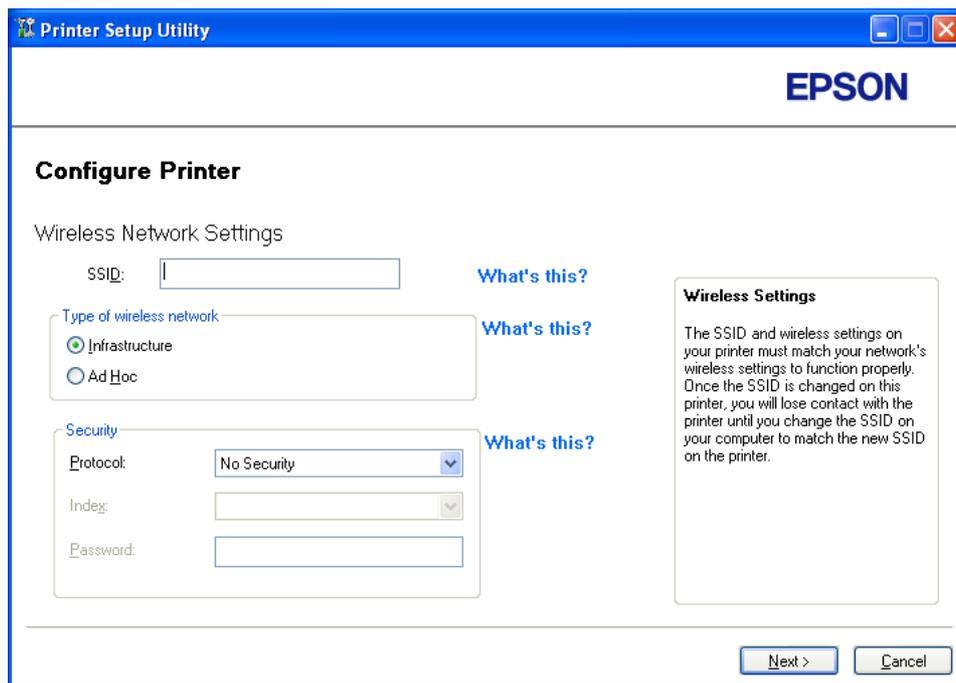
5. Select **Type of wireless network**.

6. Configure the security setting, and then click **Next**.
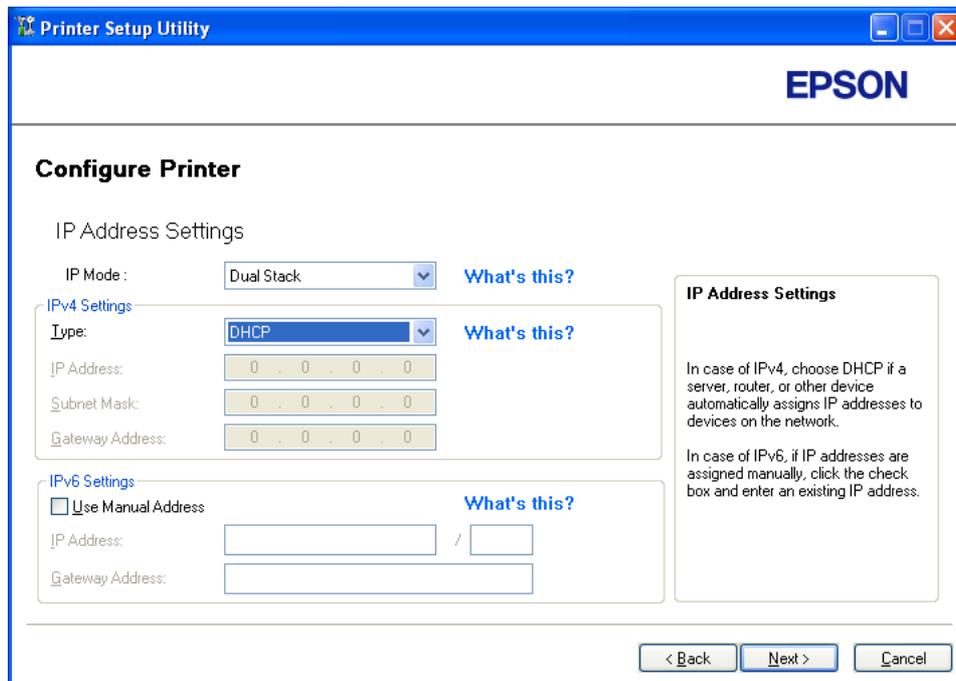
    The "IP Address Settings" screen appears.

7. Select **IP Mode** depending on your network scheme.

    When **IPv4** is selected, configure the following:

a   Select **Type**.

b   If you have selected **Use Manual Address** from **Type**, enter the following items:

❏   **IP Address** of your printer
❏   **Subnet Mask**
❏   **Gateway Address**

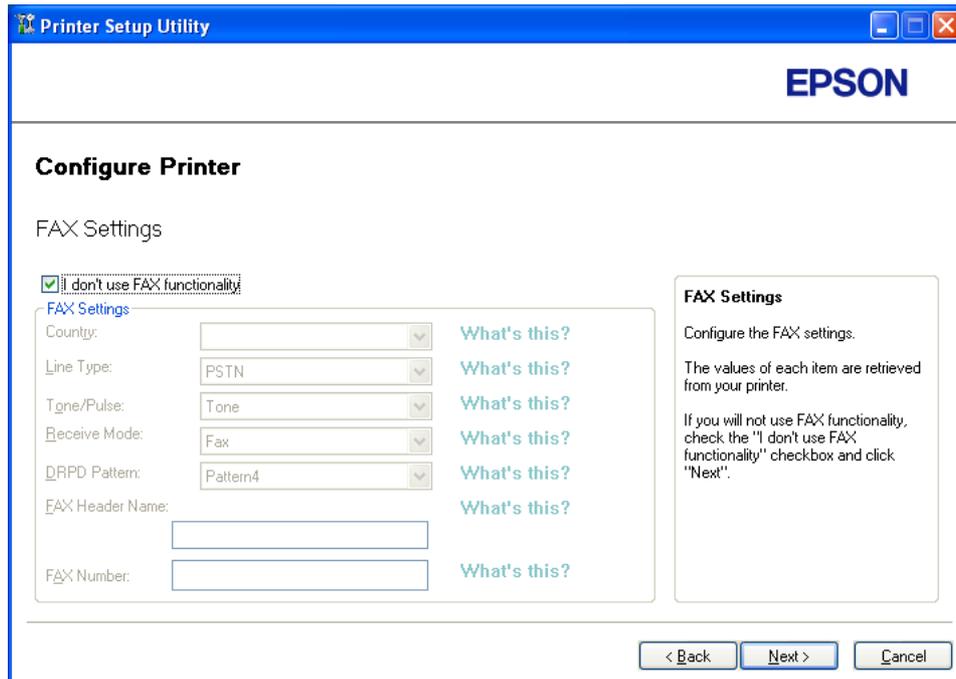When **Dual Stack** is selected, configure the following:

a   Configure **IPv4 Settings**.

b   If you have selected the **Use Manual Address** check box under **IPv6 Settings**, enter the following items:

❏   **IP Address** of your printer
❏   **Gateway Address**

8.   Click **Next**.

The "FAX Settings" screen appears.

9. Configure the fax settings if necessary.

    Note:
    If you will not use the fax feature, select the **I don't use FAX functionality** *check box.*

10. Click **Next**.

11. Ensure that the wireless settings are displayed, and then click **Apply**.
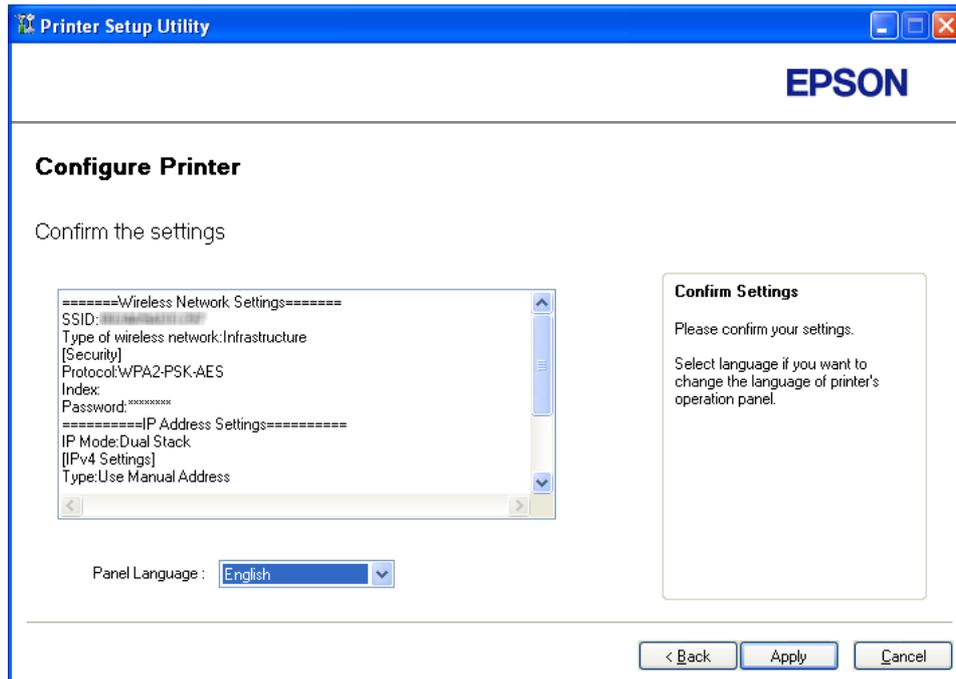
12. Click **Yes** to restart your printer.

The "Configuration Complete" screen appears.
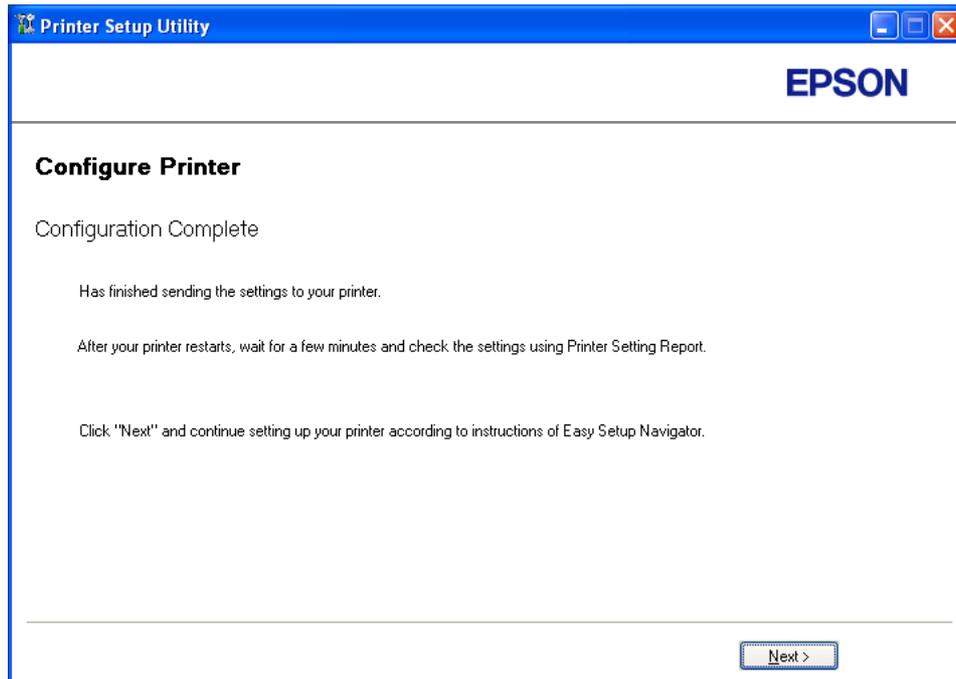
13. Wait a few minutes until the printer restarts to establish the wireless network.

14. Click **Next**.

15. Follow the on-screen instructions until the "Check Setup" screen appears.

16. Print a System Settings page from the operator panel.

    See "Printing a System Settings Page" on page 149.

17. Confirm that "Link Quality" is shown as "Good", "Acceptable" or "Low" on the report.

    Note:
    *When "Link Quality" is "No Reception", check if the wireless settings are correctly configured. To reconfigure the wireless settings, click **Return**.*

18. Confirm there are no errors displayed on the LCD panel, and then click **Start Installation**.

If you see any errors, click **Trouble Shooting Guide** and follow the instruction.
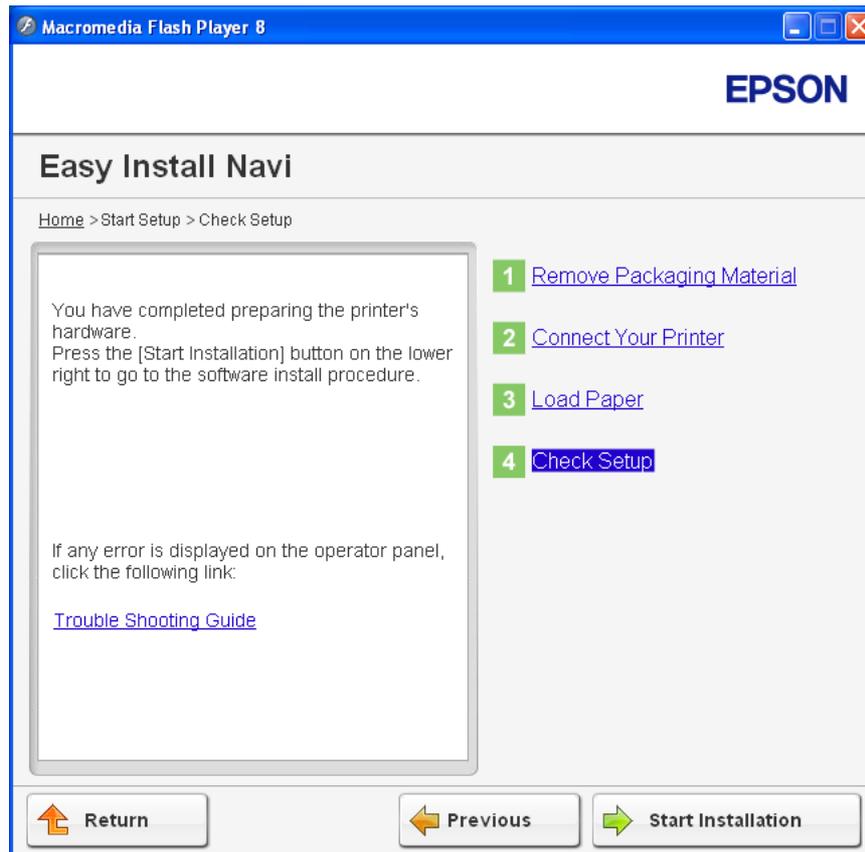
19. Check if the printer to be installed is listed in the "Select Printer" screen, and then click **Next**.

   Note:
   If the printer to be installed is not listed in the "Select Printer" screen, try the following steps:

   ❏ *Click **Refresh** to update the information.*

   ❏ *Click **Add Printer**, and then enter the details of the printer manually.*

20. Configure the required items on the "Enter Printer Settings" screen, and then click **Next**.

21. Select the software to be installed, and then click **Install**.

22. Click **Finish** to exit this tool.

   The wireless configuration is complete.

WPS-PIN

Note:
❏ *WPS-PIN (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Personal Identification Number) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by entering PIN code to a printer and computer. This setting, performed through access point, is available only when the access points of your wireless router supports WPS.*

❏ *Before WPS-PIN starts, you will need to enter your PIN code at the web page of the wireless access point. See the access point manual for the details.*

1. Select **WPS-PIN**, and then click **Next**.

2. Follow the on-screen instructions until the "Check Setup" screen appears.

3. Confirm there are no errors displayed on the LCD panel, and then click **Start Installation**.

   If you see any errors, click **Trouble Shooting Guide** and follow the instruction.

4. Check if the printer to be installed is listed in the "Select Printer" screen, and then click **Next**.

   Note:
   If the printer to be installed is not listed in the "Select Printer" screen, try the following steps:

   ❏ *Click **Refresh** to update the information.*

   ❏ *Click **Add Printer**, and then enter the details of the printer manually.*

5. Configure the required items on the "Enter Printer Settings" screen, and then click **Next**.

6. Select the software to be installed, and then click **Install**.

7. Click **Finish** to exit this tool.

   The wireless configuration is complete.

When the **WPS-PIN** operation is successful and the printer is rebooted, wireless LAN connection is completed.

WPS-PBC

Note:
WPS-PBC (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Push Button Configuration) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by pressing the button provided on the access point via wireless routers, and then performing WPS-PBC setting on the operator panel. This setting is available only when the access point supports WPS.

1. Select **WPS-PBC**, and then click **Next**.

2. Follow the on-screen instructions until the "Check Setup" screen appears.

3. Confirm there are no errors displayed on the LCD panel, and then click **Start Installation**.

If you see any errors, click **Trouble Shooting Guide** and follow the instruction.

4. Check if the printer to be installed is listed in the "Select Printer" screen, and then click **Next**.

   Note:
   If the printer to be installed is not listed in the "Select Printer" screen, try the following steps:

   ❏ *Click **Refresh** to update the information.*

   ❏ *Click **Add Printer**, and then enter the details of the printer manually.*

5. Configure the required items on the "Enter Printer Settings" screen, and then click **Next**.

6. Select the software to be installed, and then click **Install**.

7. Click **Finish** to exit this tool.

   The wireless configuration is complete.

Note:
*For **WPS-PBC** operation on the wireless LAN access point, refer to the manual supplied with the wireless LAN access point.*

When the **WPS-PBC** operation is successful and the printer is rebooted, wireless LAN connection is completed.

Operator Panel

1. Select **Operator Panel**, and then click **Next**.

2. Follow the on-screen instructions until the "Check Setup" screen appears.

3. Confirm there are no errors displayed on the LCD panel, and then click **Start Installation**.

    If you see any errors, click **Trouble Shooting Guide** and follow the instruction.

4. Check if the printer to be installed is listed in the "Select Printer" screen, and then click **Next**.

Note:
If the printer to be installed is not listed in the "Select Printer" screen, try the following steps:

❏ *Click **Refresh** to update the information.*

❏ *Click **Add Printer**, and then enter the details of the printer manually.*

5. Configure the required items on the "Enter Printer Settings" screen, and then click **Next**.

6. Select the software to be installed, and then click **Install**.

7. Click **Finish** to exit this tool.

   The wireless configuration is complete.

EpsonNet Config

1. Select **EpsonNet Config**, and then click **Next**.

2. Follow the on-screen instructions until the "Check Setup" screen appears.

3. Confirm there are no errors displayed on the LCD panel, and then click **Start Installation**.

If you see any errors, click **Trouble Shooting Guide** and follow the instruction.

4. Check if the printer to be installed is listed in the "Select Printer" screen, and then click **Next**.

    Note:
    If the printer to be installed is not listed in the "Select Printer" screen, try the following steps:

    ❏ *Click **Refresh** to update the information.*

    ❏ *Click **Add Printer**, and then enter the details of the printer manually.*

5. Configure the required items on the "Enter Printer Settings" screen, and then click **Next**.

6. Select the software to be installed, and then click **Install**.

7. Click **Finish** to exit this tool.

    The wireless configuration is complete.

When the EpsonNet Config operation is successful and the printer is rebooted, wireless LAN connection is completed.

Setting up a New Wireless Network Environment for Your Computer (When You Need to Setup Your Wireless Connectivity With Your Computer)

For DHCP Network:

1. Setting up your computer for wireless connectivity:

   Note:
   You can also change the wireless settings using the wireless application that may be installed in your computer.

   For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

   a   Select **Network Connections** from **Control Panel**.

   b   Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.

   c   Select the **Wireless Networks** tab.

   d   Ensure that the check box for **Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings** is selected.

   Note:
   *Make note of the wireless settings on the **Advanced** window (step f) and the **Wireless network properties** window (step h). You may require these settings later.*

   e   Click the **Advanced** button.

   f   Select **Computer-to-computer (ad hoc) networks only** and close the **Advanced** dialog box.

   g   Click the **Add** button to display **Wireless network properties**.

h   On the **Association** tab, enter the following information and click **OK**.

Network name (SSID): xxxxxxxx (xxxxxxxx indicates a wireless device's SSID which you use)

Network Authentication: Open

Data encryption: Disabled

i   Click the **Move up** button to move the newly added SSID to the top of the list.

j   Click **OK** to close the **Wireless Network Connection Properties** dialog box.

For Windows Vista:

a   Display **Control Panel**.

b   Select **Network and Internet**.

c   Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d   Select **Connect to a network**.

e   Select **xxxxxxxx** (xxxxxxxx indicates a wireless device's SSID which you use) from the
    network items listed in the available network list, and click **Connect**.

f   Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008:

a   Display **Control Panel**.

b   Select **Network and Internet**.

c   Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d   Select **Connect to a network**.

e   Select **xxxxxxxx** (xxxxxxxx indicates a wireless device's SSID which you use) from the
    network items listed in the available network list, and click **Connect**.

f   Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7:

a   Display **Control Panel**.

b   Select **Network and Internet**.

c   Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d   Select **Connect to a network**.

e   Select **xxxxxxxx** (xxxxxxxx indicates a wireless device's SSID which you use) from the
    network items listed in the available network list, and click **Connect**.

2. Check the IP address assigned by AutoIP on the printer.

a   On the operator panel, press the **System** button.

b   Select Admin Menu, and then press the ⊛ button.

c Select Network, and then press the ⓄK button.

d Select TCP/IP, and then press the ⓄK button.

e Select IPv4, and then press the ⓄK button.

f Select IP Address, and then press the ⓄK button.

(Default IP address range: 169.254.xxx.yyy)

```
IP Address
169.254.000.041*
```

3. Ensure that the IP Address on your computer is assigned by DHCP.
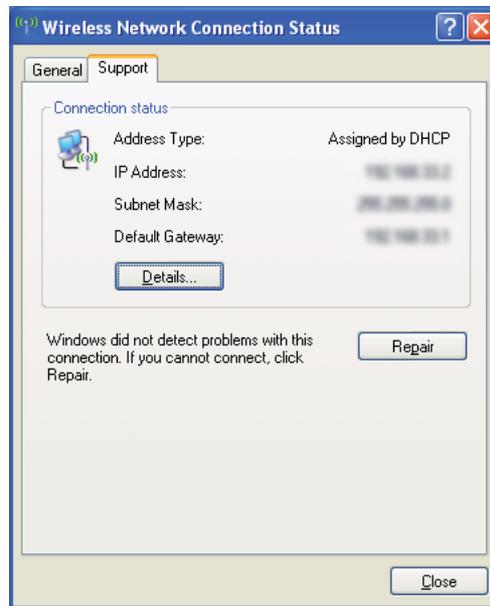
4. Launch your web browser.

5. Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.

EpsonNet Config appears.
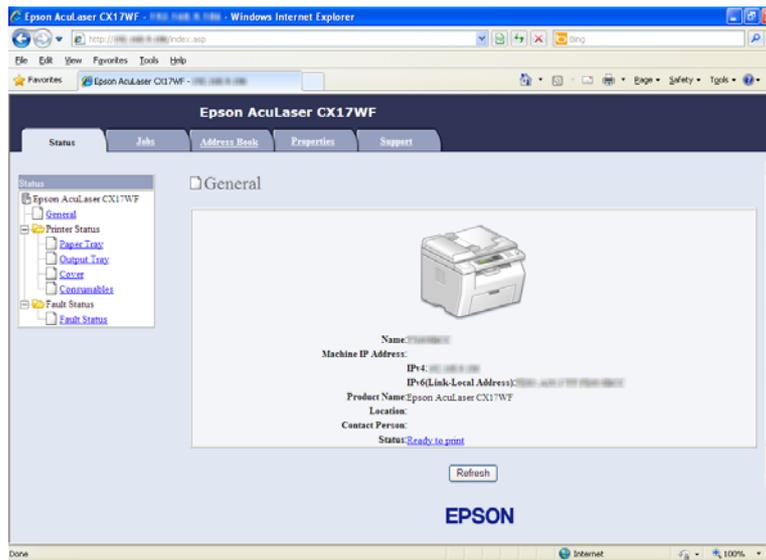
6. Create wireless setting of the printer on EpsonNet Config.

7. Reboot the printer.

8. Restore the wireless settings on your computer.

    Note:
    If the operating system on your computer provides a wireless configuration software, use it to change the wireless settings. See the instructions below.

    For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

    a Select **Network Connections** from **Control Panel**.

    b Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.

    c Select **Wireless Networks** tab.

    d Ensure that the check box for **Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings** is selected.

    e Click **Advanced**.

f You can either set the printer to the ad-hoc mode or the infrastructure mode.

❏ For Ad hoc mode:
   Select **Computer-to-computer (ad hoc) networks only** and close the dialog box.
❏ For Infrastructure mode:
   Select **Access point (Infrastructure) networks only** and close the dialog box.

g Click **Add** to display **Wireless network properties**.

h Enter the setting that you will send to the printer and click **OK**.

i Click **Move up** to move the setting to the top of the list.

j Click **OK** to close the **Wireless Network Connection Properties** dialog box.

For Windows Vista:

a Display **Control Panel**.

b Select **Network and Internet**.

c Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d Select **Connect to a network**.

e Select the network, and then click **Connect**.

f Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008:

a Display **Control Panel**.

b Select **Network and Internet**.

c Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d Select **Connect to a network**.

e Select the network, and then click **Connect**.

f   Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7:

a   Display **Control Panel**.

b   Select **Network and Internet**.

c   Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d   Select **Connect to a network**.

e   Select the network, and then click **Connect**.

For Fixed IP Networks:

1.   Set up your computer for wireless connectivity:

Note:
If the operating system on your computer provides a wireless configuration software, use it to change the wireless settings. See the instructions below.

For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

a   Select **Network Connections** from **Control Panel**.

b   Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.

c   Select the **Wireless Networks** tab.

d   Ensure that the check box for **Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings** is selected.

Note:
Be sure to write down the current wireless computer settings in step f and step h so that you can restore them later.

e   Click the **Advanced** button.

f   Select **Computer-to-computer (ad hoc) networks only** and close the **Advanced** dialog box.

g   Click the **Add** button to display **Wireless network properties**.

h   On the **Association** tab, enter the following information and click **OK**.

Network name (SSID): xxxxxxxx (xxxxxxxx indicates a wireless device's SSID which you use)

Network Authentication: Open

Data encryption: Disabled

i   Click the **Move up** button to move the newly added SSID to the top of the list.

j   Click **OK** to close the **Wireless Network Connection Properties** dialog box.

For Windows Vista:

a   Display **Control Panel**.

b   Select **Network and Internet**.

c   Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d   Select **Connect to a network**.

e   Select **xxxxxxxx** (xxxxxxxx indicates a wireless device's SSID which you use) from the
     network items listed in the available network list, and click **Connect**.

f   Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008:

a   Display **Control Panel**.

b   Select **Network and Internet**.

c   Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d   Select **Connect to a network**.

e   Select **xxxxxxxx** (xxxxxxxx indicates a wireless device's SSID which you use) from the
     network items listed in the available network list, and click **Connect**.

f   Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7:

a   Display **Control Panel**.

b   Select **Network and Internet**.

c   Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d   Select **Connect to a network**.

e   Select **xxxxxxxx** (xxxxxxxx indicates a wireless device's SSID which you use) from the
     network items listed in the available network list, and click **Connect**.

2. Check the IP address on your computer.

3. Set the IP address on the printer.

    See "Assigning an IP Address (for IPv4 Mode)" on page 48.

4. Launch your web browser.

5. Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.

EpsonNet Config appears.
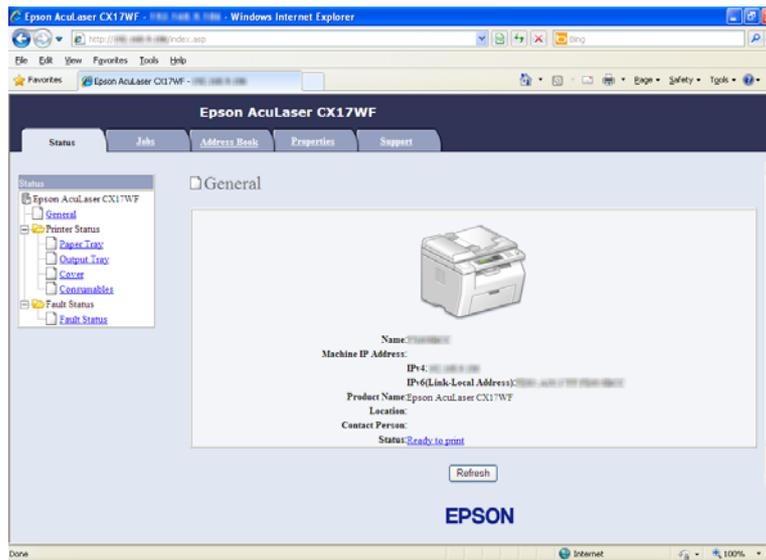
6. Change the wireless setting of the printer on EpsonNet Config.

7. Reboot the printer.

8. Restore the wireless settings on your computer.

    Note:
    If the operating system on your computer provides a wireless configuration software, use it to change the wireless settings. Or you can change the wireless settings using the tool provided with the operating system. See the instructions below.

    For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

    a   Select **Network Connections** from **Control Panel**.

    b   Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.

    c   Select **Wireless Networks** tab.

    d   Ensure that the check box for **Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings** is selected.

    e   Click **Advanced**.

f   You can either set the printer to the ad-hoc mode or the infrastructure mode.

❏   For Ad hoc mode:
Select **Computer-to-computer (ad hoc) networks only** and close the dialog box.
❏   For Infrastructure mode:
Select **Access point (Infrastructure) networks only** and close the dialog box.

g   Click **Add** to display **Wireless network properties**.

h   Enter the setting that you will send to the printer and click **OK**.

i   Click **Move up** to move the setting to the top of the list.

j   Click **OK** to close the **Wireless Network Connection Properties** dialog box.

For Windows Vista:

a   Display **Control Panel**.

b   Select **Network and Internet**.

c   Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d   Select **Connect to a network**.

e   Select the network, and then click **Connect**.

f   Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008:

a   Display **Control Panel**.

b   Select **Network and Internet**.

c   Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d   Select **Connect to a network**.

e   Select the network, and then click **Connect**.

f   Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.


For Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7:

a   Display **Control Panel**.

b   Select **Network and Internet**.

c   Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d   Select **Connect to a network**.

e   Select the network, and then click **Connect**.

Setting Up for Shared Printing (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)

You can share your new printer on the network using the *Software Disc* that shipped with your printer, or using Windows Point and Print or peer-to-peer method. However, if you use either of the Microsoft methods you will not get features such as the Status Monitor and other printer utilities, which will get installed with the *Software Disc*.

If you want to use the printer on a network, share the printer and install its drivers on all the computers on the network.

Note:
You need to purchase a Ethernet cable separately for shared printing.

For Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition

1. Click **Start** (**start** for Windows XP) — **Printers and Faxes**.

2. Right-click this printer icon and select **Properties**.

3. From the **Sharing** tab, select **Share this printer**, and then enter a name in the **Share name** text box.

4. Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients using this printer.

5. Click **OK**.

    If the files are not present in your computer, and then you will be prompted to insert the server operating system CD.

6. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

For Windows Vista and Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

1. Click **Start** — **Control Panel** — **Hardware and Sound** — **Printers**.

2. Right-click the printer icon and select **Sharing**.

3. Click **Change sharing options** button.

4. The "**Windows needs your permission to continue**" appears.

5. Click **Continue** button.

6. Select the **Share this printer** check box, and then enter a name in the **Share name** text box.

7. Select **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients using this printer.

8. Click **OK**.

9. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

For Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

1. Click **Start** — **Control Panel** — **Hardware and Sound** — **Printers**.

2. Right-click the printer icon and select **Sharing**.

3. Select the **Share this printer** check box, and then enter a name in the **Share name** text box.

4. Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients using this printer.

5. Click **OK**.

6. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

For Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2008 R2

1. Click **Start** — **Devices and Printers**.

2. Right-click the printer icon and select **Printer properties**.

3. On the **Sharing** tab, select the **Share this printer** check box, and then enter a name in the **Share name** text box.

4. Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients using this printer.

5. Click **OK**.

6. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

To check that the printer is shared:

❏ Ensure that the printer object in the **Printers**, **Printers and Faxes** or **Devices and Printers** folder is shared. The share icon is shown under the printer icon.

❏ Browse **Network** or **My Network Places**. Find the host name of the server and look for the shared name you assigned to the printer.

Now that the printer is shared, you can install the printer on network clients using the Point and Print method or the peer-to-peer method.

Point and Print

Point and Print is a Microsoft Windows technology that allows you to connect to a remote printer. This feature automatically downloads and installs the print driver.

For Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition

1. On the Windows desktop of the client computer, double-click **My Network Places**.

2. Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.

3. Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.
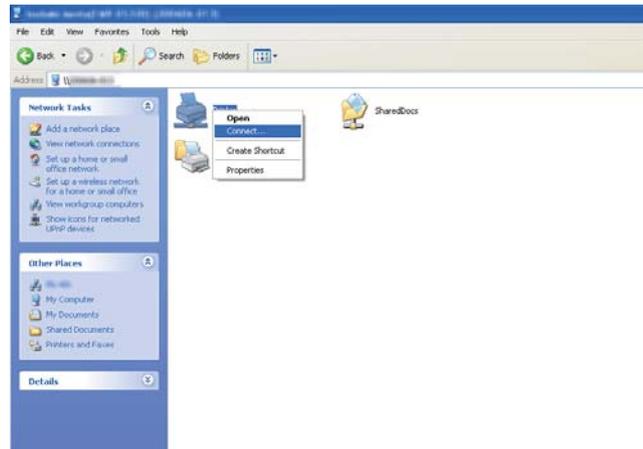
Wait for the driver information to be copied from the server computer to the client computer, and for a new printer object to be added to the **Printers and Faxes** folder. The time taken to copy varies based on the network traffic.

Close **My Network Places**.

4. Print a test page to verify installation.

   a Click **start** (**Start** for Windows Server 2003/Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition) — **Printers and Faxes**.

   b Select the printer you have installed.

   c Click **File** — **Properties**.

   d On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.

   When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

For Windows Vista and Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

1. Click **Start** — **Network**.

2. Locate and double-click the host name of the server computer.

3. Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.

4. Click **Install driver**.

5. Click **Continue** in the **User Account Control** dialog box.

    Wait until the driver is copied from the server to the client computer. A new printer object is added to the **Printers** folder. The duration of this procedure may vary based on the network traffic.

6. Print a test page to verify installation.

    a   Click **Start** — **Control Panel** — **Hardware and Sound**.

    b   Select **Printers**.

    c   Right-click the printer you just created and select **Properties**.

    d   On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.

    When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

For Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

1. Click **Start** — **Network**.

2. Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.

3. Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.

4. Click **Install driver**.

5. Wait until the driver is copied from the server to the client computer. A new printer object will be added to the **Printers** folder. The time taken for these activities varies based on network traffic.

6. Print a test page to verify installation.

    a   Click **Start** — **Control Panel**.

    b   Select **Hardware and Sound**.

    c   Select **Printers**.

    d   Right-click the printer you just created and select **Properties**.

e   On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.

When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

For Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2008 R2

1. Click **Start** — **Network**.

2. Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.

3. Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.

4. Click **Install driver**.

5. Wait until the driver is copied from the server to the client computer. A new printer object will be added to the **Devices and Printers** folder. The time taken for these activities varies based on network traffic.

6. Print a test page to verify installation.

a   Click **Start** — **Devices and Printers**.

b   Right-click the printer you just created and select **Printer properties**.

c   On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.

When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

Peer-to-Peer

If you use the peer-to-peer method, the print driver is installed on each client computer. The client computers can modify the driver and handle the print jobs.

For Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition

1. Click **start** (**Start** for Windows Server 2003/Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition) — **Printers and Faxes**.

2. Click **Add a printer** (**Add Printer** for Windows Server 2003/Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition) to launch the **Add Printer Wizard**.

3. Click **Next**.

4. Select **A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer**, and then click **Next**.

5. Click **Browse for a printer**, and then click **Next**.

6. Select the printer, and then click **Next**. If the printer is not listed, click **Back** and enter in the path of the printer in the text box.
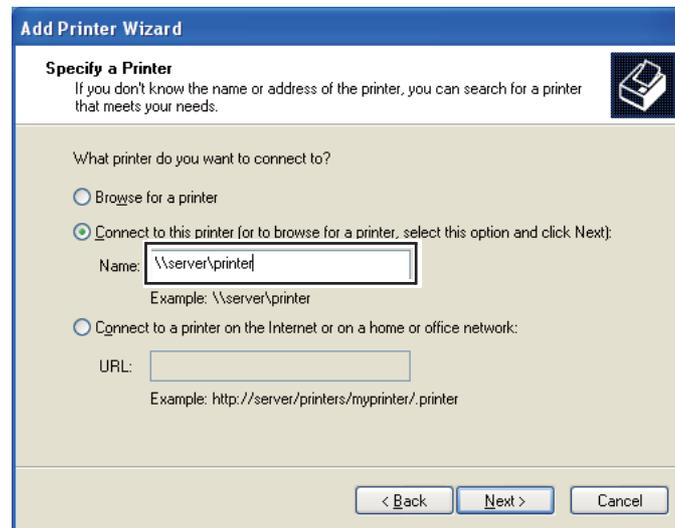
For example:**\\[server host name]\[shared printer name]**

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it to the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a print driver. If no system driver is available, specify the location where the driver is available.

7. Select **Yes** if you want this printer to be set as the default printer, and then click **Next**.

8. Click **Finish**.

For Windows Vista and Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

1. Click **Start** — **Control Panel** — **Hardware and Sound** — **Printers**.

2. Click **Add a printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.

3. Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**. If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**, or select **The printer that I want isn't listed** and enter in the path of the printer in the **Select a shared printer by name** text box and click **Next**.

For example:**\\[server host name]\[shared printer name]**

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it on the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a print driver. If no system driver is available, specify the location where the driver is available.

4. Confirm the printer name, and then select whether to use this printer as the default printer and click **Next**.

5. If you want to verify installation, click **Print a test page**.

6. Click **Finish**.

When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

For Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

1. Click **Start** — **Control Panel** — **Hardware and Sound** — **Printers**.

2. Click **Add a printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.

3. Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**. If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**, or select **The printer that I want isn't listed** and enter in the path of the printer in the **Select a shared printer by name** text box and click **Next**.

   For example: \\[server host name]\[shared printer name]

   The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it on the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

   If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a print driver. If no system driver is available, specify the location where the driver is available.

4. Confirm the printer name, and then select whether to use this printer as the default printer and click **Next**.

5. Select whether to share this printer or not.

6. If you want to verify installation, click **Print a test page**.

7. Click **Finish**.

   When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

For Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2008 R2

1. Click **Start** — **Devices and Printers**.

2. Click **Add a printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.

3. Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**. If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**, or select **The printer that I want isn't listed**. Click **Select a shared printer by name** and enter in the path of the printer in the text box, and then click **Next**.

   For example: \\[server host name]\[shared printer name]

   The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it to the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

   If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a print driver. If no system driver is available, you need to specify the path to the available drivers.

4. Confirm the printer name, and then click **Next**.

5. Select whether to use this printer as the default printer.

6. If you want to verify installation, click **Print a test page**.

7. Click **Finish**.

    When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

Installing Print Driver on Computers Running Mac OS X

Configuring Wireless Settings on the Operator Panel (Epson AcuLaser CX17WF Only)

You can configure wireless settings on the operator panel.

Important:
❏ *The Wireless LAN feature is unavailable depending on the region you purchased.*

❏ *Be sure to get the SSID and security information from a system administrator in advance when you use other than WPS to configure wireless settings.*

❏ *Ensure that the Ethernet cable has been disconnected from the printer before you configure the wireless settings.*

Note:
❏ *Before you configure the wireless settings on the operator panel, you need to set up the wireless network settings on your computer. For details, see the Wireless Network Setup Guide.*

❏ *For information on the specifications of the wireless LAN feature, see "Configuring Wireless Settings (Epson AcuLaser CX17WF Only)" on page 57.*

You can select a method to configure a wireless setting from the following:

Manual Setup For	Access Point (Infrastructure) Network
	Computer-to-computer (Ad-hoc) Network

Automatic Setup Using	WPS-PIN[1]
	WPS-PBC[2]

[1] WPS-PIN is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by entering PIN code in the printer and computer. This setting, performed through access point, is available only when the access points of your wireless router supports WPS.

[2] WPS-PBC is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by pressing the button provided on the access point via wireless routers, and then performing WPS-PBC setting on the operator panel. This setting is available only when the access point supports WPS.

Manual Setup

You can manually configure wireless settings to connect your printer to an access point (infrastructure) network or computer-to-computer (ad-hoc) network.

Connecting to Access Point Network

To configure the wireless settings through an access point such as a wireless router:

1. On the operator panel, press the **System** button.

2. Select Admin Menu, and then press the (OK) button.

3. Select Network, and then press the (OK) button.

4. Select Wireless Setup, and then press the (OK) button.

5. Select Manual Setup, and then press the (OK) button.

6. Enter the SSID, and then press the (OK) button.

    Use the numeric keypad to enter the desired value, and press the ◀ or ▶ button to move a cursor.

7. Select Infrastructure, and then press the (OK) button.

8. Select an encryption type, and then press the (OK) button.

    Important:
    Be sure to use one of the supported encryption methods to protect your network traffic.

9. Enter the WEP key or pass phrase, and then press the (OK) button.

    Use the numeric keypad to enter the desired value, and press the ◀ or ▶ button to move a cursor.

When you select WEP(64Bit) or WEP(128Bit) for an encryption type at step 8, select a transmit key after entering the WEP key.

10. Wait a few minutes until the printer restarts to establish the wireless network.

11. Print a System Settings page from the operator panel.

    See "Printing a System Settings Page" on page 149.

12. Confirm that "Link Quality" is shown as "Good", "Acceptable" or "Low" on the report.

    Note:
    When "Link Quality" is "No Reception", check if the wireless settings are correctly configured.

Using Ad Hoc Connection

To configure the wireless settings for an ad-hoc connection where the wireless devices communicate directly with each other without an access point:

1. On the operator panel, press the **System** button.

2. Select Admin Menu, and then press the (ok) button.

3. Select Network, and then press the (ok) button.

4. Select Wireless Setup, and then press the (ok) button.

5. Select Manual Setup, and then press the (ok) button.

6. Enter the SSID, and then press the (ok) button.

    Use the numeric keypad to enter the desired value, and press the ◀ or ▶ button to move a cursor.

7. Select Ad-hoc, and then press the (ok) button.

8. Select an encryption type, and then press the (ok) button.

    Important:
    Be sure to use one of the supported encryption methods to protect your network traffic.

9. Enter the WEP key, and then press the (ok) button.

    Use the numeric keypad to enter the desired value, and press the ◀ or ▶ button to move a cursor.

10. Select a transmit key.

11. Wait a few minutes until the printer restarts to establish the wireless network.

12. Print a System Settings page from the operator panel.

    See "Printing a System Settings Page" on page 149.

13. Confirm that "Link Quality" is shown as "Good", "Acceptable" or "Low" on the report.

    Note:
    When "Link Quality" is "No Reception", check if the wireless settings are correctly configured.

Auto Setup With the Access Point

If the access point such as a wireless router supports the WPS, security settings can be made automatically.

WPS-PBC

Note:
WPS-PBC is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by pressing the button provided on the access point via wireless routers, and then performing WPS-PBC setting on the operator panel. This setting is available only when the access point supports WPS.

1. On the operator panel, press the **System** button.

2. Select Admin Menu, and then press the (ok) button.

3. Select Network, and then press the (ok) button.

4. Select Wireless Setup, and then press the (ok) button.

5. Select WPS, and then press the (ok) button.

6. Select Push Button Control, and then press the (ok) button.

7. Select Yes, and then press the (ok) button.

8. Press and hold the WPS button on the access point.

9. Wait a few minutes until the printer restarts to establish the wireless network.

10. Print a System Settings page from the operator panel.

See "Printing a System Settings Page" on page 149.

11. Confirm that "Link Quality" is shown as "Good", "Acceptable" or "Low" on the report.

Note:
When "Link Quality" is "No Reception", check if the wireless settings are correctly configured.

WPS-PIN

Note:
❑ *WPS-PIN is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by entering PIN code to a printer and computer. This setting, performed through access point, is available only when the access points of your wireless router supports WPS.*

❑ *Before WPS-PIN starts, you will need to enter your PIN code at the web page of the wireless access point. See the access point manual for the details.*

1. On the operator panel, press the **System** button.

2. Select Admin Menu, and then press the (ok) button.

3. Select Network, and then press the (ok) button.

4. Select Wireless Setup, and then press the (ok) button.

5. Select WPS, and then press the (ok) button.

6. Select PIN Code, and then press the (ok) button.

7. Take a note of PIN code displayed on the operator panel.

8. Select Start Configuration, and then press the (ok) button.

9. If SSID selection screen appears, select the SSID, and then press the (ok) button.

10. Enter the PIN code of the printer at the web page of the wireless access point.

11. Wait a few minutes until the printer restarts to establish the wireless network.

12. Print a System Settings page from the operator panel.

See "Printing a System Settings Page" on page 149.

13. Confirm that "Link Quality" is shown as "Good", "Acceptable" or "Low" on the report.

    Note:
    When "Link Quality" is "No Reception", check if the wireless settings are correctly configured.

Installing the Drivers and Software

The following procedure uses Mac OS X 10.6 as an example.

1. Run the *Software Disc* on the Mac OS X.

2. Double-click the installer icon.

3. Click **Continue** on the **Introduction** screen.

4. Select a language for the **Software License Agreement**.

5. After reading the **Software License Agreement**, click **Continue**.

6. If you agree to the terms of the **Software License Agreement**, click **Agree** to continue the installation process.

7. Click **Continue** if **Select a Destination** screen appears.

8. Click **Install** to perform the standard installation.

9. Enter the administrator's name and password, and then click **OK**.

10. Click **Continue Installation**.

11. Click **Restart** to complete installation.

Adding a Printer on Mac OS X 10.5/10.6

When Using a USB connection

1. Turn off the printer and your computer.

2. Connect the printer and your computer with the USB cable.

3. Turn on the printer and your computer.

4. Display **System Preferences**, and then click **Print & Fax**.

5. Confirm your USB printer is added to **Print & Fax**.

   If your USB printer is not displayed, execute the following procedures.

6. Click the plus (**+**) sign, and then click **Default**.

7. Select the printer connected via USB from the **Printer Name** list.

   Name, **Location**, and **Print Using** are automatically entered.

8. Click **Add**.

When Using Bonjour (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)

1. Turn on the printer.

2. Ensure that your computer is connected to the network.

   If you use wired connection, ensure that the Ethernet cable is connected between the printer and the network.

   If you use wireless connection, ensure that wireless connection is configured properly on your computer and printer.

3. Display **System Preferences**, and then click **Print & Fax**.

4. Click the plus (**+**) sign, and then click **Default**.

5. Select the printer connected via Bonjour from the **Printer Name** list.

   Name and **Print Using** are automatically entered.

6. Click **Add**.

When Using IP Printing (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)

1. Turn on the printer.

2. Ensure that your computer is connected to the network.

If you use wired connection, ensure that the Ethernet cable is connected between the printer and the network.

If you use wireless connection, ensure that wireless connection is configured properly on your computer and printer.

3. Display **System Preferences**, and then click **Print & Fax**.

4. Click the plus (**+**) sign, and then click **IP**.

5. Select **Line Printer Daemon - LPD** for **Protocol**.

6. Enter the IP address of the printer in the **Address** area.

    Name and **Print Using** are automatically entered.

    Note:
    When the printing is set up using IP printing, the queue name is displayed as blank. You do not need to specify it.

7. Click **Add**.

Adding a Printer on Mac OS X 10.4

When Using a USB Connection

1. Turn off the printer and your computer.

2. Connect the printer and your computer with the USB cable.

3. Turn on the printer and your computer.

4. Start **Printer Setup Utility**.

    Note:
    *You can find **Printer Setup Utility** in the **Utilities** folder in **Applications**.*

5. Confirm your USB printer is added to **Printer List**.

    If your USB printer is not displayed, execute the following procedures.

6. Click **Add**.

7. Click **Default Browser** in the **Printer Browser** dialog box.

8. Select the printer connected via USB from the **Printer Name** list.

    Name, **Location** and **Print Using** are automatically entered.

9. Click **Add**.

When Using Bonjour (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)

1. Turn on the printer.

2. Ensure that your computer is connected to the network.

    If you use wired connection, ensure that the Ethernet cable is connected between the printer and the network.

    If you use wireless connection, ensure that wireless connection is configured properly on your computer and printer.

3. Start **Printer Setup Utility**.

    Note:
    *You can find **Printer Setup Utility** in the **Utilities** folder in **Applications**.*

4. Click **Add**.

5. Click **Default Browser** in the **Printer Browser** dialog box.

6. Select the printer connected via Bonjour from the **Printer Name** list.

    Name and **Print Using** are automatically entered.

7. Click **Add**.

When Using IP Printing (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)

1. Turn on the printer.

2. Ensure that your computer is connected to the network.

    If you use wired connection, ensure that the Ethernet cable is connected between the printer and the network.

If you use wireless connection, ensure that wireless connection is configured properly on your computer and printer.

3. Start **Printer Setup Utility**.

    Note:
    *You can find **Printer Setup Utility** in the **Utilities** folder in **Applications**.*

4. Click **Add**.

5. Click **IP Printer** in the **Printer Browser** dialog box.

6. Select **Line Printer Daemon - LPD** for **Protocol**.

7. Enter the IP address of the printer in the **Address** area.

    Name and **Print Using** are automatically entered.

    Note:
    When the printing is set up using IP printing, the queue name is displayed as blank. You do not need to specify it.

8. Click **Add**.

Chapter 5

Printing Basics

About Print Media

Using paper that is not appropriate for the printer can cause paper jams, image quality problems, or printer failure. To achieve the best performance from your printer, we recommend you to use only the paper described in this section.

When using paper other than that recommended, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorised dealer.

Print Media Usage Guidelines

The printer tray accommodates various sizes and types of paper and other specialty media. Follow these guidelines when loading paper and media:

❏ Envelopes can be printed from the multipurpose feeder (MPF) and priority sheet inserter (PSI).

❏ Fan paper or other specialty media before loading in the tray.

❏ Do not print on label stock once a label has been removed from a sheet.

❏ Use only paper envelopes. Do not use envelopes with windows, metal clasps, or adhesives with release strips.

❏ Print all envelopes single-sided only.

❏ Some wrinkling and embossing may occur when printing envelopes.

❏ Do not overload the tray. Do not load print media above the fill line on the inside of the paper width guides.

❏ Adjust the paper width guides to fit the paper size.

❏ If excessive jams or wrinkles occur, use paper or other media from a new package.

> ⚠ **Warning:**
> *Do not use conductive paper such as origami paper, carbonic paper or conductively-coated paper. When paper jam occurs, it may cause short-circuit and eventually a fire accident.*

See Also:
❏ *"Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 119*

❏ *"Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 127*

❏ *"Loading Envelope in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 124*

❏ *"Loading Envelope in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 129*

❏ *"Printing on Custom Size Paper" on page 146*

Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) Guidelines (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)

The ADF accommodates the following original sizes:

❏ Width: 148–215.9 mm (5.83–8.50 inches)

❏ Length: 210–355.6 mm (8.27–14.00 inches)

The weight range includes 60–105 gsm.

Follow these guidelines when loading original documents into the ADF:

❏ Load documents face up so that the top of the document enters the printer first.

❏ Place only loose sheets of paper in the ADF.

❏ Adjust the document guides so that they fit against the documents.

❏ Insert paper in the document feeder tray only when the ink on the paper is completely dry.

❏ Do not load documents above the MAX fill line. You can load up to 15 sheets of 64 gsm documents.

Note:
You cannot load the following documents in the ADF. Be sure to place them on the document glass.

	Curled originals		Pre-punched paper
	Lightweight originals		Folded, creased or torn originals
	Cut and paste originals		Carbon paper

Print Media That Can Damage Your Printer

Your printer is designed to use a variety of media types for print jobs. However, some media can cause poor output quality, increased paper jams, or damage to your printer.

Unacceptable media includes:

❏ Rough or porous media

❏ Plastic media

❏ Paper that has been folded or wrinkled

❏ Paper with staples

❏ Envelopes with windows or metal clasps

❏ Padded envelopes

❏ Non-laser glossy or coated paper

❏ Perforated media

> *Warning:*
> *Do not use conductive paper such as origami paper, carbonic paper or conductively-coated paper. When paper jam occurs, it may cause short-circuit and eventually a fire accident.*

Print Media Storage Guidelines

Providing good storage conditions for your paper and other media contributes to optimum print quality.

❑ Store print media in dark, cool, relatively dry locations. Most paper items are susceptible to damage from ultraviolet (UV) and visible light. UV radiation, which is emitted by the sun and fluorescent bulbs, is particularly damaging to paper items. The intensity and length of exposure to visible light on paper items should be reduced as much as possible.

❑ Maintain constant temperatures and relative humidity.

❑ Avoid attics, kitchens, garages, and basements for storing print media.

❑ Store print media flat. Print media should be stored on pallets, cartons, shelves, or in cabinets.

❑ Avoid having food or drinks in the area where print media is stored or handled.

❑ Do not open sealed packages of paper until you are ready to load them into the printer. Leave paper in the original packaging. For most commercial cut-size grades, the ream wrapper contains an inner lining that protects the paper from moisture loss or gain.

❑ Leave the media inside the bag until you are ready to use it; reinsert unused media in the bag and reseal it for protection. Some specialty media is packaged inside resealable plastic bags.

Supported Print Media

Using unsuitable print media may lead to paper jams, poor print quality, breakdown and damage to your printer. To use the features of this printer effectively, use the suggested print media that is recommended here.

Important:
The toner may come off the print media, if it gets wet by water, rain, steam and so on. For details, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorized dealer.

Usable Print Media

The types of print media that can be used on this printer are as follows:

Paper Size	A4 SEF (210 × 297 mm)
	B5 SEF (182 × 257 mm)
	A5 SEF (148 × 210 mm)
	Letter SEF (8.5 × 11 inches)
	Legal SEF (8.5 × 14 inches)
	Folio SEF (8.5 × 13 inches)
	Executive SEF (7.25 × 10.5 inches)
	C5 SEF (162 × 229 mm)
	Monarch SEF (3.875 × 7.5 inches)
	Monarch LEF (7.5 × 3.875 inches)[*]
	Com 10 SEF (4.125 × 9.5 inches)
	DL SEF (110 × 220 mm)
	DL LEF (220 × 110 mm)[*]
	Custom size:
	Width: 76.2–215.9 mm (3–8.5 inches)
	Length: 127–355.6 mm (5 –14 inches)
Paper Type	Plain
	Bond
	Lightweight Cardstock
	Lightweight Glossy Cardstock
	Envelope
	Labels
	Recycled
Loading Capacity	Multipurpose Feeder (MPF): 150 sheets of standard paper
	Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI): 10 sheets of standard paper

[*] Monarch and DL can be supported by LEF with their flap open.

Note:
❏ *SEF and LEF indicate the paper feed direction; SEF stands for short-edge feed. LEF stands for long-edge feed.*

❏ *Use only laser print media. Do not use ink jet paper in this printer.*

See Also:
❏ *"Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 119*

❏ *"Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 127*

❏ *"Loading Envelope in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 124*

❏ *"Loading Envelope in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 129*

Printing on print media that differs from the paper size or paper type selected on the print driver may lead to paper jams. To ensure that printing is correctly done, select the correct paper size and paper type.

Loading Print Media

Loading print media properly helps prevent jams and ensures trouble-free printing.

Before loading print media, identify the recommended print side of the print media. This information is usually on the print media package.

Note:
After loading paper in the feeder, specify the same paper type on the operator panel.

Capacity

The MPF can hold:

❏ 150 sheets of standard paper

❏ 16.2 mm (0.64 inches) of thick paper

❏ One sheet of coated paper

❏ Five envelopes

❏ 16.2 mm (0.64 inches) of labels

The PSI can hold:

❏ 10 sheets of standard paper or one sheet of other paper

Print Media Dimensions

Both the MPF and PSI accepts print media within the following dimensions:

❏ Width: 76.2 –215.9 mm (3.00–8.50 inches)

❏ Length: 127–355.6 mm (5.00–14.00 inches)

Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)

Note:
❏ *To avoid paper jams, do not remove the priority sheet inserter (PSI) while printing is in progress.*

❏ *Use only laser print media. Do not use ink jet paper in this printer.*

1. Open the front cover.
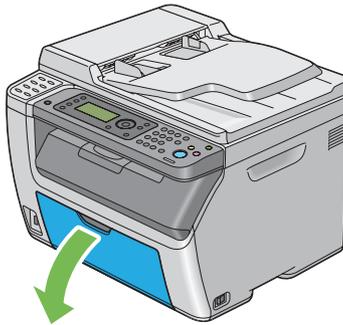
Note:
When you use the MPF for the first time, open the front cover by pulling out the instruction sheet.
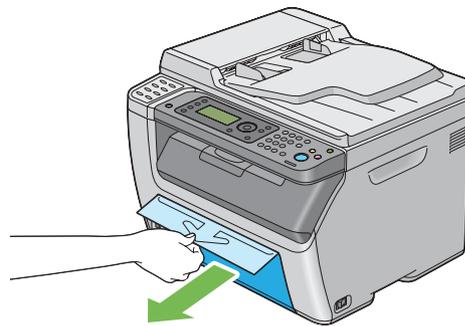
2. Pull the PSI out.
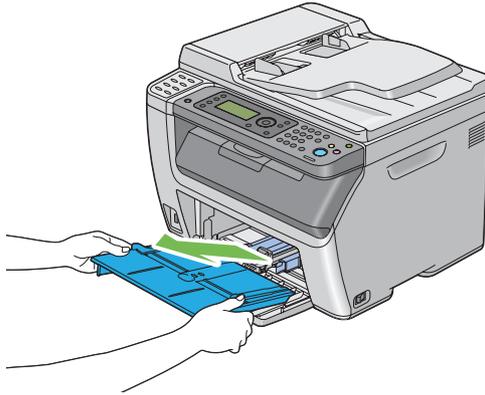
Note:
❏ *When you use the MPF for the first time, remove the instruction sheet attached to the PSI with adhesive tape.*

❏ *Read the instruction sheet before you use the PSI.*
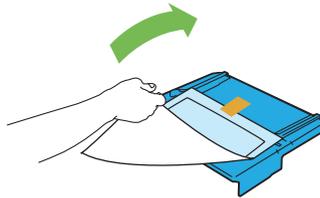
3. Pull the slide bar forward until it stops.
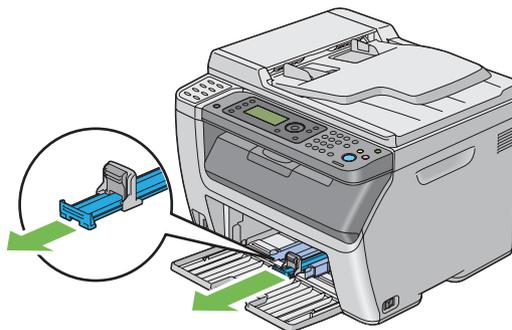
4. Pull the length guide forward until it stops.
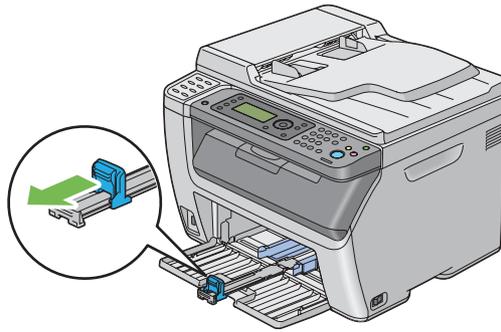
5. Adjust the paper width guides to their maximum width.
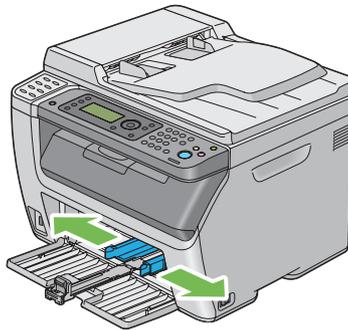
6. Before loading the print media, flex the sheets back and forth, and then fan them. Straighten the edges of the stack on a level surface.
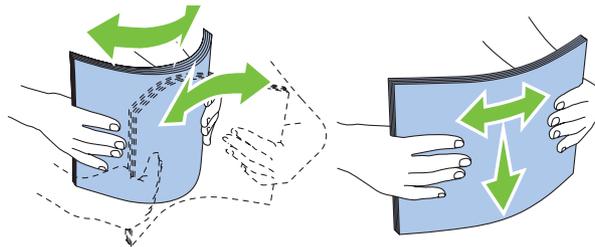
7. Load print media on the MPF with the top edge first and with the recommended print side facing up.
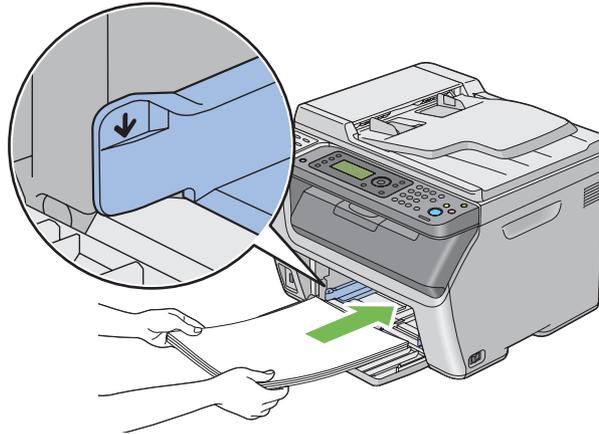
8. Adjust the paper width guides until they rest lightly against the edges of the stack of print media.
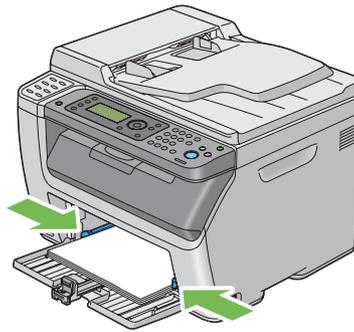
9. Slide the length guide towards the printer until it touches the print media.
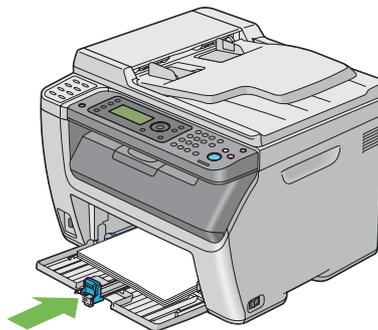
Note:
Depending on the size of print media, first slide the slide bar backward until it stops, and then pinch the length guide and slide it backward until it touches print media.
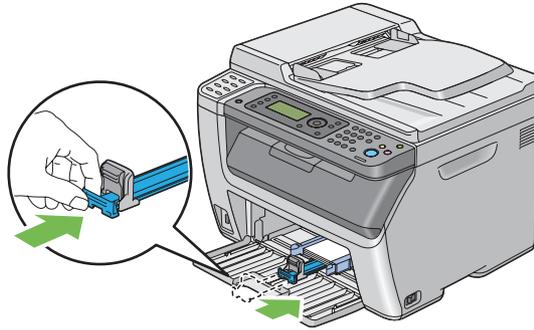
10. Insert the PSI into the printer and then align the PSI to the marking on the MPF.
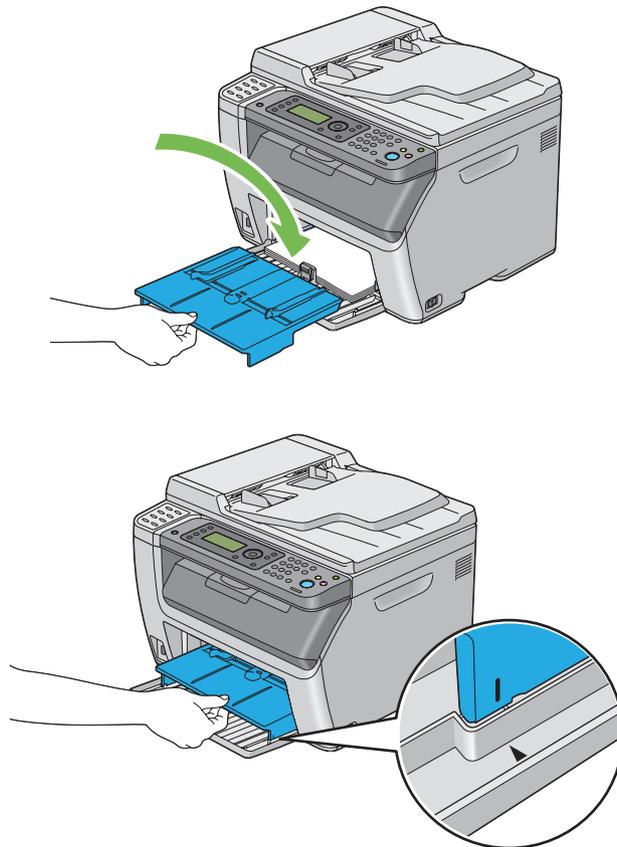
11. Select the paper type from the print driver if the loaded print media is not plain paper. If a user-specified print media is loaded in the MPF, you must specify the paper size setting by using the print driver.

Note:
For more information about setting the paper size and type on the print driver, refer to the Help provided for the print driver.

Note:
For standard-size paper, adjust the length guide and paper width guides first and then set paper.

Loading Envelope in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)

Note:
When you print on envelopes, be sure to specify the envelope setting on the print driver. If not specified, the print image will be rotated 180 degrees.

When Loading Com 10, DL, or Monarch

Load envelopes with the side to be printed on facing up, the flap side facing down, and the flap turned to the right.
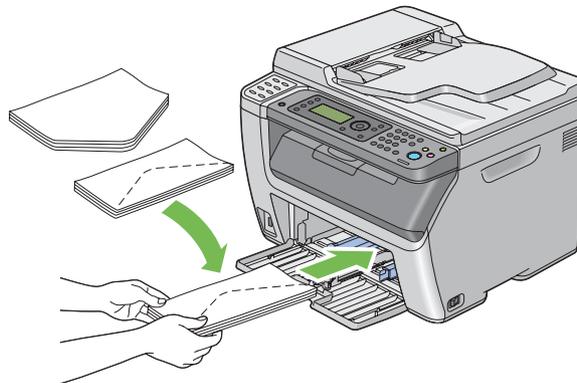
To prevent DL and Monarch from being wrinkled, they are recommended to be loaded with the print-side facing up, flap opened, and facing you.
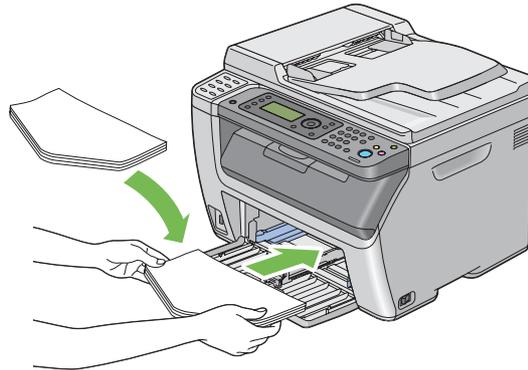
Note:
When you load the envelopes in the long-edge feed (LEF) orientation, be sure to specify the landscape orientation on the print driver.

When Loading C5

Load envelopes with the side to be printed on facing up, flap opened, and facing you.
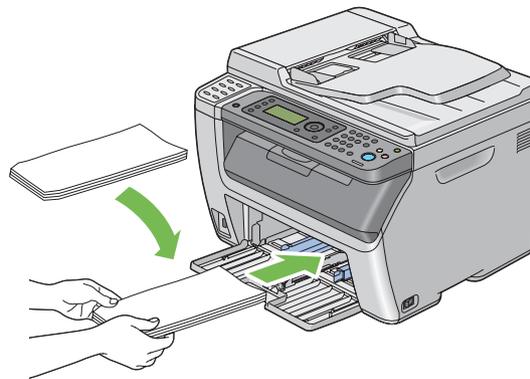
Important:
Never use envelopes with windows, or coated linings. These lead to paper jams and can cause damage to the printer.

Note:

❏ *If you do not load envelopes in the MPF right after they have been removed from the packaging, they may bulge. To avoid jams, flatten them as shown below when loading them in the MPF.*
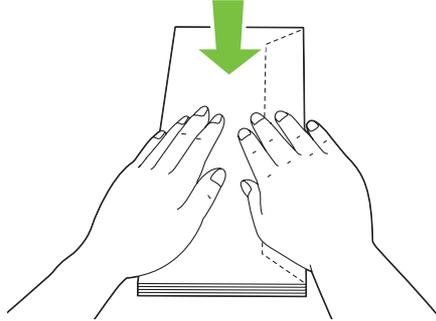
❏ *If envelopes are still not fed correctly, add some bending to the flap of the envelopes as shown in the following illustration.*
The amount of the bending shall be 5 mm (0.20 inches) or less.
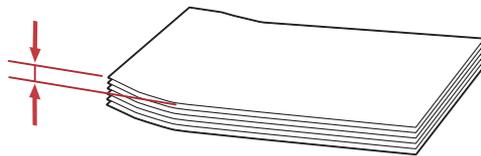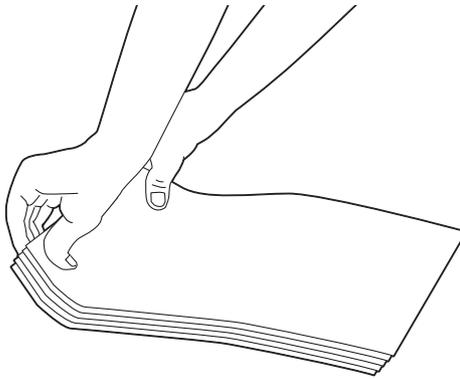
❏ *To confirm the correct orientation of each print media such as envelopes, see the instruction on the Envelope/Paper Setup Navigator on the print driver.*

Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)

Note:

❏ *To avoid paper jams, do not remove the PSI while printing is in progress.*

❏ *Use only laser print media. Do not use ink jet paper in this printer.*

1. Open the front cover.
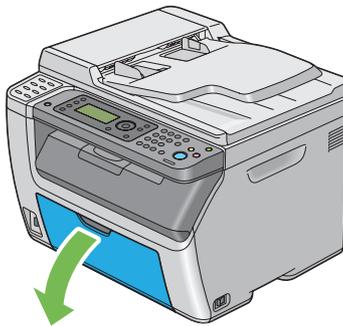
2. Slide the PSI forward, and then align the PSI to the marking on the MPF.
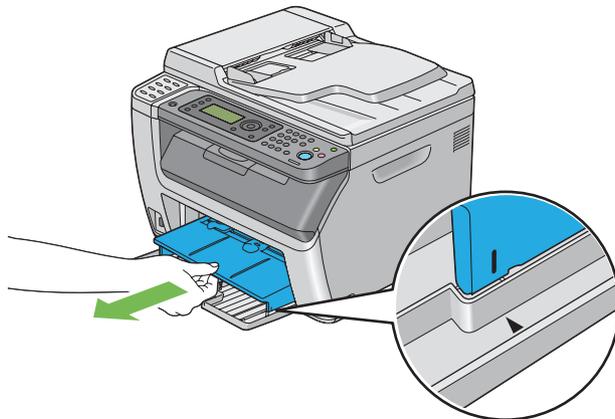
3. Adjust the paper width guides to their maximum width.
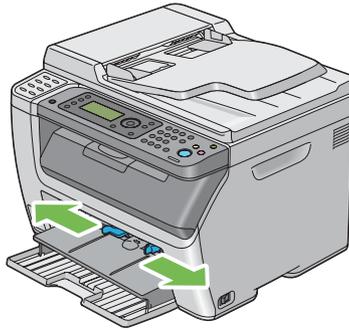
4. Before loading the print media, flex the sheets back and forth, and then fan them. Straighten the edges of the stack on a level surface.
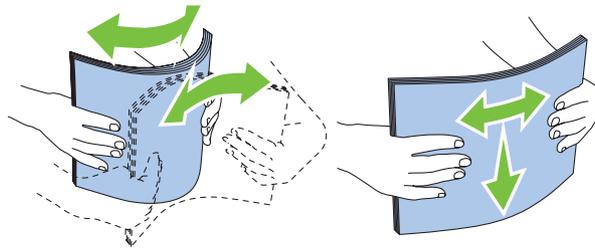
5. Load print media on the PSI with the top edge first and with the recommended print side facing up.
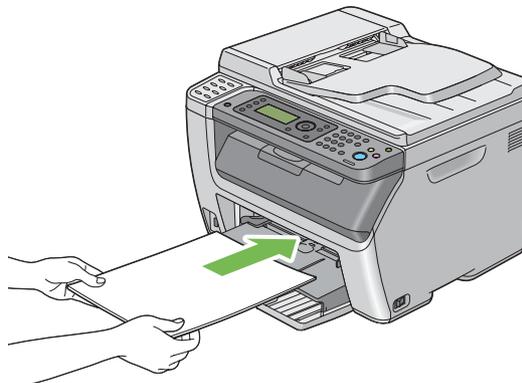
6. Adjust the paper width guides until they rest lightly against the edges of the stack of print media.
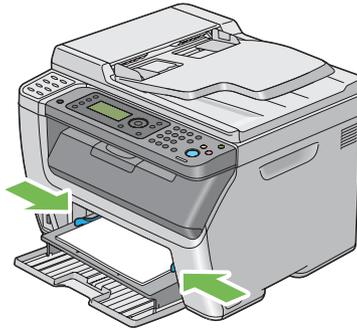
7. Select the paper type from the print driver if the loaded print media is not plain paper. If a user-specified print media is loaded in the PSI, you must specify the paper size setting by using the print driver.

Note:
For more information about setting the paper size and type on the print driver, refer to the Help provided for the print driver.

Loading Envelope in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)

Note:
❏ *Be sure to fully insert the envelope until it stops. Otherwise, print media that is loaded on the MPF will be fed.*

❏ *When you print on envelopes, be sure to specify the envelope setting on the print driver. If not specified, the print image will be rotated 180 degrees.*

When Loading Com 10, DL, or Monarch

Load the envelope with the side to be printed on facing up, the flap side facing down, and the flap turned to the right.
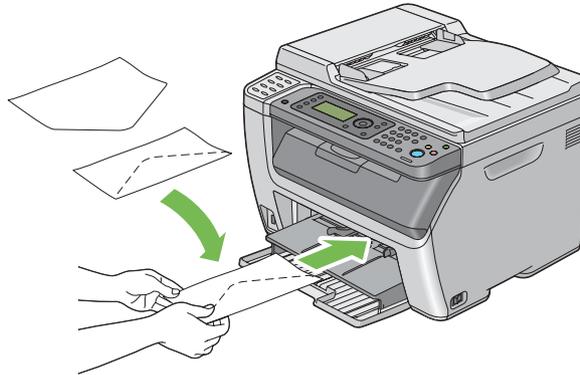
When Loading C5

Load the envelope with the side to be printed on facing up, flap opened, and facing you.
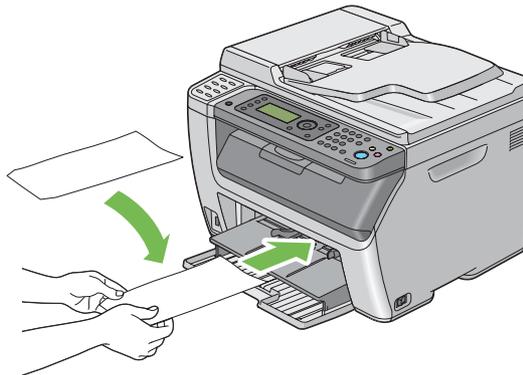
Important:
Never use envelopes with windows, or coated linings. These lead to paper jams and can cause damage to the printer.

Note:
❏ *If you do not load envelopes in the PSI right after they have been removed from the packaging, they may bulge. To avoid jams, flatten them as shown below when loading them in the PSI.*
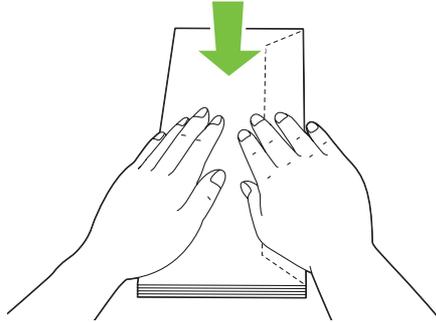
❏ *If envelopes are still not fed correctly, add some bending to the flap of the envelopes as shown in the following illustration.*
The amount of the bending shall be 5 mm (0.20 inches) or less.
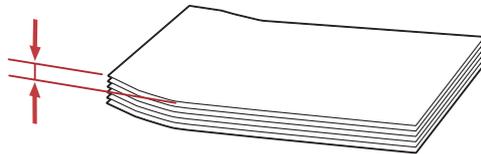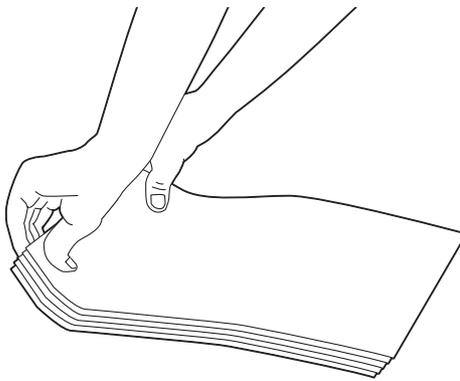
❏ *To confirm the correct orientation of each print media such as envelopes, see the instruction on the Envelope/Paper Setup Navigator on the print driver.*

Manual Duplex Printing (Windows Print Driver Only)

Note:
When printing on curled paper, straighten the paper and then insert it into the feeder.

When you start manual duplex printing, the instruction window appears. Note that the window cannot be reopened once it is closed. Do not close the window until duplex printing is complete.

Operations on Your Computer

The following procedure uses Microsoft® Windows® XP WordPad as an example.

Note:
*The way to display the printer **Properties**/**Printing Preferences** dialog box differs according to the application software. Refer to the manual of your respective application software.*

1. From the **File** menu, select **Print**.

2. Select the printer from the **Select Printer** list box, and then click **Preferences**.

    The **Paper/Output** tab of the **Printing Preferences** dialog box appears.

3. From **Duplex**, select either **Flip on Short Edge** or **Flip on Long Edge** to define the way 2-sided print pages are bound.
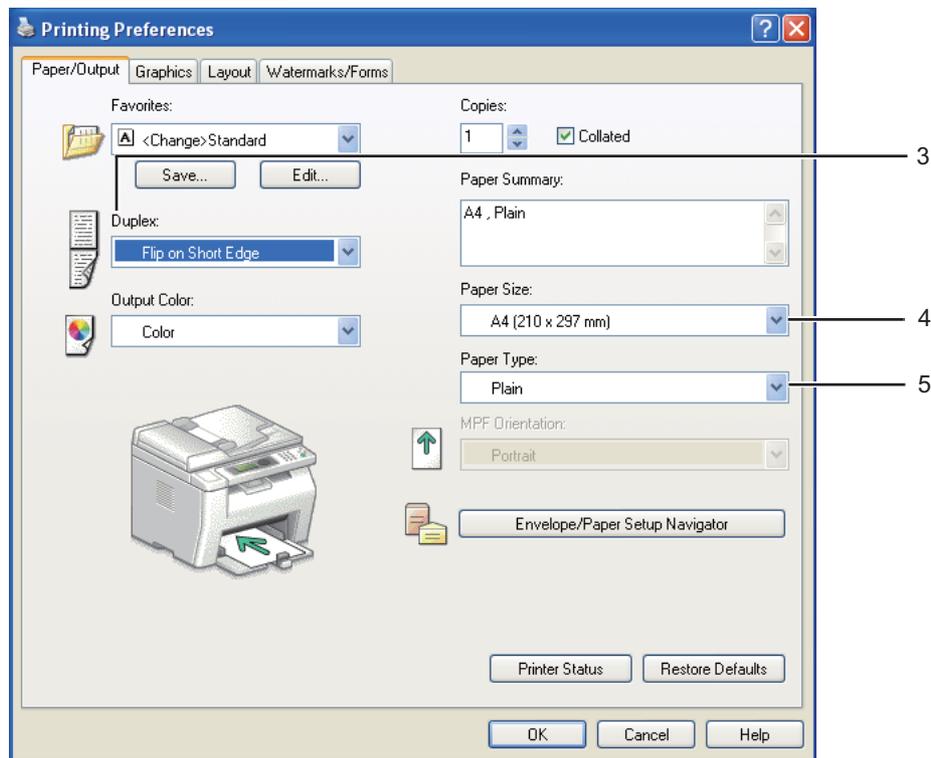
4. From **Paper Size**, select the size of the document to be printed.

5. From **Paper Type**, select the paper type to be used.

6. Click **OK** to close the **Printing Preferences** dialog box.

7. Click **Print** in the **Print** dialog box to start printing.

Important:
When you start manual duplex printing, the instruction window appears. Note that the window cannot be reopened once it is closed. Do not close the window until duplex printing is complete.

Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)

1. First print the even pages (rear sides).

    For a six page document, rear sides are printed in the order of page 6, page 4, then page 2.

The **Data** LED blinks and the `Insert Output to Tray` message appears on the LCD panel when the even pages finish printing.
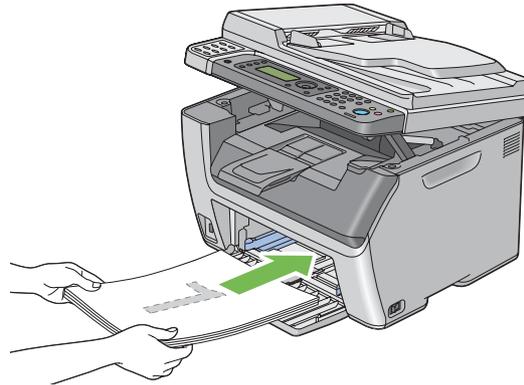
2. After the even pages are printed, remove the paper stack from the center output tray.

    Note:
    Warped or curled prints can cause paper jams. Straighten them before setting them.

3. Stack the prints and set them as they are (with the blank side facing up) into the MPF, and then press the (OK) button.

    Pages are printed in the order of page 1 (rear of page 2), page 3 (rear of page 4), and then page 5 (rear of page 6).
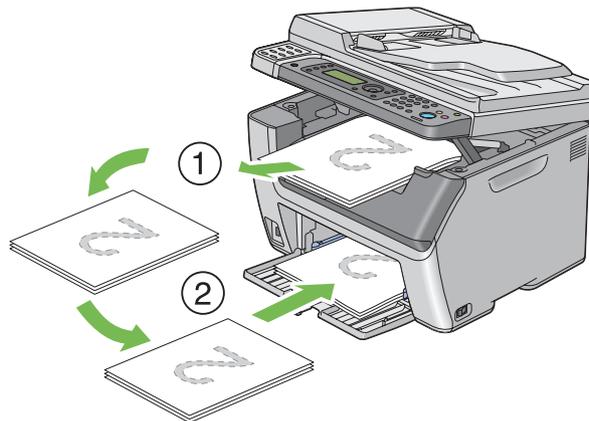
Note:
Printing on both sides of the paper is not possible if the document consists of various sizes of paper.

Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)

1. First print the even pages (rear sides).

   For a six page document, rear sides are printed in the order page 6, page 4, then page 2.

   The **Data** LED blinks and the `Insert Output to Tray` message appears on the LCD panel when the even pages finish printing.
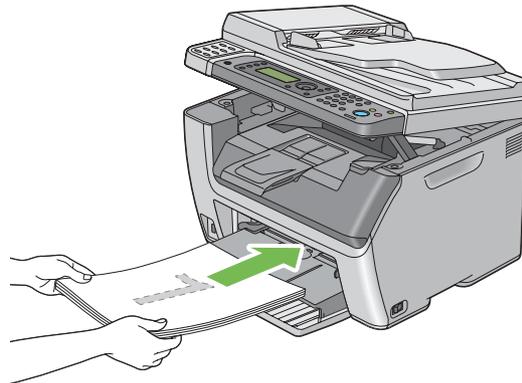
2. After the even pages are printed, remove the paper stack from the center output tray.

   Note:
   Warped or curled prints can cause paper jams. Straighten them before setting them.

3. Stack the prints and set them as they are (with the blank side face up) into the PSI, and then press the (OK) button.

   Pages are printed in order of page 1 (rear of page 2), page 3 (rear of page 4), and then page 5 (rear of page 6).
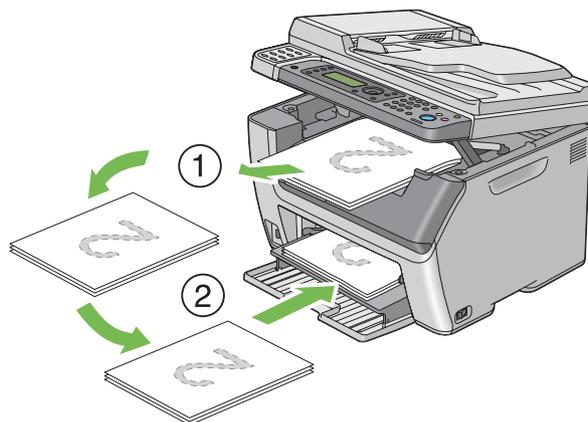
Note:
Printing on both sides of the paper is not possible if the document consists of various sizes of paper.

Using the Output Tray Extension

The output tray extension is designed to prevent print media from falling from the printer after the print job is complete.

Before printing a long length document, ensure that the output tray extension is fully extended.
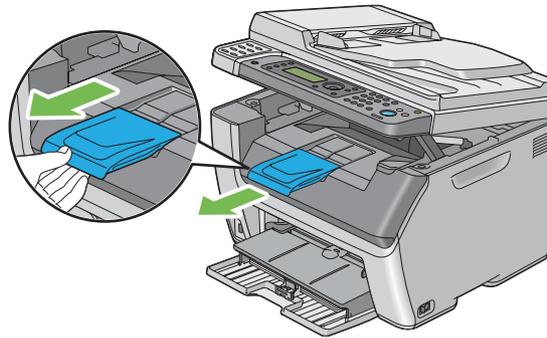
Note:
When you pull out envelopes or small size print media from the center output tray, lift up the scanner.
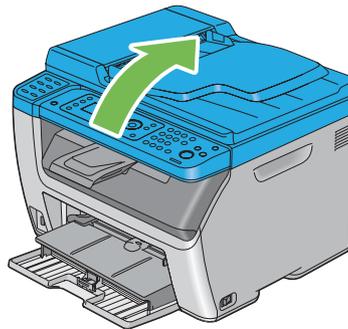
Setting Paper Sizes and Types

When loading print media, set the paper size and type on the operator panel before printing.

This section describes how to set the paper size and type on the operator panel.

See Also:
"Understanding the Printer Menus" on page 250

Setting Paper Sizes

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Tray Settings, and then press the (OK) button.

3. Select MPF, and then press the (OK) button.

4. Select Paper Size, and then press the (OK) button.

5. Select the correct paper size for the print media loaded, and then press the (OK) button.

Setting Paper Types

Important:
Paper type settings must match those of the actual print media loaded in the tray. Otherwise, print-quality problems can occur.

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Tray Settings, and then press the (OK) button.

3. Select MPF, and then press the (OK) button.

4. Select Paper Type, and then press the (OK) button.

5. Select the correct paper type for the print media loaded, and then press the (OK) button.

Printing

This section covers how to print documents from your printer and how to cancel a job.

Printing from the Computer

Install the print driver to use all the features of the printer. When you choose **Print** from an application, a window representing the print driver opens. Select the appropriate settings for the file to print. Print settings selected from the driver have precedence over the default menu settings selected from the operator panel or Printer Setting Utility.

Clicking **Properties**/**Preferences** from the initial **Print** dialog box enables you to change the print settings. If you are not familiar with a feature in the print driver window, open the Help for more information.

The following procedure uses Windows XP WordPad as an example.

To print a job from an application:

1. Open the file you want to print.

2. From the **File** menu, select **Print**.

3. Verify that the correct printer is selected in the dialog box. Modify the print settings as needed (such as the pages you want to print or the number of copies).

4. To adjust print settings not available from the first screen, such as **Paper Size**, **Paper Type**, or **MPF Orientation**, click **Preferences**.

   The **Printing Preferences** dialog box appears.

5. Specify the print settings. For more information, click **Help**.

6. Click **OK** to close the **Printing Preferences** dialog box.

7. Click **Print** to send the job to the selected printer.

Canceling a Print Job

There are several methods for canceling a print job.

Canceling From the Operator Panel

To cancel a job after it has started printing:

1. Press the ⊘ (**Stop**) button.

    Note:
    Printing is canceled only for the current job. All the following jobs will continue to print.

Canceling a Job From the Computer (Windows)

Canceling a Job From the Taskbar

When you send a job to print, a small printer icon appears in the right corner of the taskbar.

1. Double-click the printer icon.

    A list of print jobs appears in the printer window.

2. Select the job you want to cancel.

3. Press the **Delete** key.

4. Click **Yes** on the **Printers** dialog box to cancel a print job.

Canceling a Job From the Desktop

1. Minimize all programs to reveal the desktop.

    Click **start** — **Printers and Faxes** (for Windows XP).

    Click **Start** — **Printers and Faxes** (for Windows Server® 2003).

    Click **Start** — **Devices and Printers** (for Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2).

    Click **Start** — **Control Panel** — **Hardware and Sound** — **Printers** (for Windows Vista® and Windows Server 2008).

    A list of available printers appears.

2. Double-click the printer you selected when you sent the job.

    A list of print jobs appears in the printer window.

3. Select the job you want to cancel.

4. Press the **Delete** key.

5. Click **Yes** on the **Printers** dialog box to cancel a print job.

Direct Print Using the USB Storage Device

The Print From USB Memory feature allows you to print PDF, TIFF, or JPEG files that are scanned and stored in a USB memory using the Scan to USB Memory function of Epson AcuLaser CX17 Series.

To print a file in a USB storage device:

1. Insert a USB storage device to the front USB port of the printer.

    USB Memory appears.

2. Select Print From, and then press the (ok) button.

    Select Document appears.

3. Select the desired file, and then press the (ok) button.

4. Select printing options as required.

5. Press the ◇ (**Start**) button.

    Note:
    You can print files scanned and stored using the Scan to USB Memory feature. Only files that are scanned by Epson AcuLaser CX17 Series can be printed correctly.

Selecting Printing Options

Selecting Printing Preferences (Windows)

Printing preferences control all of your print jobs, unless you override them specifically for a job. For example, if you want to use duplex printing for most jobs, set this option in printing preferences.

To select printing preferences:

1. Click **start** — **Printers and Faxes** (for Windows XP).

Click **Start** — **Printers and Faxes** (for Windows Server 2003).

Click **Start** — **Devices and Printers** (for Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2).

Click **Start** — **Control Panel** — **Hardware and Sound** — **Printers** (for Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008).

A list of available printers appears.

2. Right-click the icon for your printer, and then select **Printing Preferences**.

   The printer's **Printing Preferences** screen appears.

3. Make selections on the driver tabs, and then click **OK** to save your selections.

Note:
*For more information about Windows print driver options, click **Help** on the print driver tab to view the Help.*

Selecting Options for an Individual Job (Windows)

If you want to use special printing options for a particular job, change the driver settings before sending the job to the printer. For example, if you want to use Photo print-quality mode for a particular graphic, select this setting in the driver before printing that job.

1. With the desired document or graphic open in your application, access the **Print** dialog box.

2. Select your printer and click **Preferences** to open the print driver.

3. Make selections on the driver tabs.

   Note:
   *In Windows, you can save current printing options with a distinctive name and apply them to other print jobs. Make selections on the **Paper/Output**, **Graphics**, **Layout**, or **Watermarks/Forms** tab, and then click **Save** under **Favorites** on the **Paper/Output** tab. Click **Help** for more information.*

4. Click **OK** to save your selections.

5. Print the job.

See the following table for specific printing options:

Printing Options for Windows

Operating System	Driver Tab	Printing Options
Windows XP, Windows XP x 64bit, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2003 x 64bit, Windows Vista, Windows Vista x 64bit, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 x 64bit, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, or Windows 7 x 64bit	**Paper/Output** tab	❏ Favorites ❏ Duplex ❏ Output Color ❏ Copies ❏ Collated ❏ Paper Summary ❏ Paper Size ❏ Paper Type ❏ MPF Orientation ❏ Envelope/Paper Setup Navigator ❏ Printer Status ❏ Restore Defaults
	Graphics tab	❏ Output Color ❏ Image Adjustment Mode ❏ Image Types ❏ Intent ❏ Screen ❏ Toner Saving Mode ❏ Image Settings ❏ Color Balance ❏ Profile Settings ❏ Restore Defaults
	Layout tab	❏ Image Orientation ❏ Multiple Up ❏ Image Order ❏ Image Border ❏ Poster/Mixed Document ❏ Output Size ❏ Reduce / Enlarge ❏ Margin Shift/Margin ❏ Restore Defaults

Operating System	Driver Tab	Printing Options
Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, or Windows 7	**Watermarks/Forms** tab	❏ Watermarks 　❏ New Text 　❏ New Bitmap 　❏ Edit 　❏ Delete 　❏ First Page Only ❏ Forms 　❏ Off 　❏ Create / Register Forms 　❏ Image Overlay ❏ Header / Footer Options ❏ Restore Defaults

Selecting Options for an Individual Job (Mac OS X)

To select print settings for a particular job, change the driver settings before sending the job to the printer.

1. With the document open in your application, click **File**, and then click **Print**.

2. Select your printer from **Printer**.

3. Select the desired printing options from the menus and drop-down lists that are displayed.

   Note:
   *In Mac OS® X, click **Save As** on the **Presets** menu screen to save the current printer settings. You can create multiple presets and save each with its own distinctive name and printer settings. To print jobs using specific printer settings, click the applicable saved preset in the **Presets** menu.*

4. Click **Print** to print the job.

Mac OS X Print Driver Printing Options:

The table shown below uses Mac OS X 10.6 TextEdit as an example.

Printing options for Mac OS X

Item	Printing Options
	❏ Copies ❏ Collated ❏ Pages ❏ Paper Size ❏ Orientation
Layout	❏ Pages per Sheet ❏ Layout Direction ❏ Border ❏ Two-Sided ❏ Reverse page orientation ❏ Flip horizontally
Paper Handling	❏ Pages to Print ❏ Page Order ❏ Scale to fit paper size ❏ Destination Paper Size ❏ Scale down only
Cover Page	❏ Print Cover Page ❏ Cover Page Type ❏ Billing Info
Scheduler	❏ Print Document ❏ Priority

Item	Printing Options

Printer Features	❏ 1. Detailed Settings
	  ❏ Output Color
	  ❏ Image Rotation (180deg)
	  ❏ Toner Saving Mode
	❏ 2. Color Balance
	  ❏ Low Density (C)
	  ❏ Medium Density (C)
	  ❏ High Density (C)
	  ❏ Low Density (M)
	  ❏ Medium Density (M)
	  ❏ High Density (M)
	  ❏ Low Density (Y)
	  ❏ Medium Density (Y)
	  ❏ High Density (Y)
	  ❏ Low Density (K)
	  ❏ Medium Density (K)
	  ❏ High Density (K)
	❏ 3. Paper Handling
	  ❏ Paper Type
	❏ 4. Printer Specific Options
	  ❏ Skip Blank Pages

Summary	

Printing Custom Size Paper

This section explains how to print on custom size paper using the print driver.

The way to load custom size paper is the same as the one to load standard size paper.

❏ "Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 119

❏ "Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 127

❏ "Setting Paper Sizes and Types" on page 136

Defining Custom Paper Sizes

Before printing, set the custom size on the print driver.

Note:
When setting the paper size on the print driver and the operator panel, be sure to specify the same size as the actual print media used. Setting the wrong size for printing can cause printer failure. This is especially true if you configure a bigger size when using a narrow width paper.

Using the Windows Print Driver

On the Windows print driver, set the custom size in the **Custom Paper Size** dialog box. This section explains the procedure using Windows XP as an example.

For Windows XP or later, an administrator's password only allows users with administrator rights to change the settings. Users without the rights of administrator can only view the contents.

1. Click **start** — **Printers and Faxes**.

2. Right-click the icon for your printer, and then select **Properties**.

3. Select the **Configuration** tab.

4. Click **Custom Paper Size**.

5. Select the custom setup you want to define from **Details**.

6. Specify the length of the short edge and long edge under **Change Setting For**. You can specify the values either by entering them directly or using the up arrow and down arrow buttons. The length of the short edge cannot be longer than the long edge, even if it is within the specified range. The length of the long edge cannot be shorter than the short edge, even if it is within the specified range.

7. To assign a paper name, select the **Name the Paper Size** check box, and then enter the name in **Paper Name**. Up to 14 characters can be used for the paper name.

8. If necessary, repeat steps 5 to 7 to define another custom size.

9. Click **OK** twice.

Printing on Custom Size Paper

Use the following procedures to print using either the Windows or Mac OS X print drivers.

Using the Windows Print Driver

This section explains the procedure using Windows XP WordPad as an example.

Note:
The way to display the printer **Properties**/**Printing Preferences** *dialog box differs according to the application software. Refer to the manual of your respective application software.*

1. From the **File** menu, select **Print**.

2. Select your printer and click **Preferences**.

3. Select the **Paper/Output** tab.

4. Select the size of the document to be printed from **Paper Size**.

5. Select the paper type to be used from **Paper Type**.

6. Click the **Layout** tab.

7. From **Output Size**, select the custom size you defined. If you have selected the custom size from **Paper Size** in step 4, select **Same as Paper Size**.

8. Click **OK**.

9. Click **Print** in the **Print** dialog box to start printing.

Using the Mac OS X Print Driver

This section explains the procedure using Mac OS X 10.6 TextEdit as an example.

1. From the **File** menu, select **Page Setup**.

2. Select your printer from **Format For**.

3. From **Paper Size**, select **Manage Custom Sizes**.

4. In the **Custom Paper Sizes** window, click **+**.

   A newly created setting "Untitled" is displayed in the list.

5. Double-click "Untitled" and enter a name for the setting.

6. Enter the size of the document to be printed in the **Width** and **Height** boxes of **Paper Size**.

7. Specify **Non-Printable Area** if necessary.

8. Click **OK**.

9. Make sure that the newly created paper size is chosen in **Paper Size**, and then click **OK**.

10. From the **File** menu, select **Print**.

11. Click **Print** to start printing.

Checking Status of Print Job

Checking Status (Windows Only)

You can check the printer status with Status Monitor. Double-click the Status Monitor printer icon on the taskbar at the bottom right of the screen. The **Printer Selection** window appears, which displays the printer name, printer connection port, printer status, and model name. Check the column **Status** to know the current status of your printer.

Settings button: Displays the **Settings** window and allows you to modify the Status Monitor settings.

Click the name of the desired printer listed on the **Printer Selection** window. The **Printer Status** window appears. You can check the printer status and print job status.

For more information about Status Monitor, see Help. The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example:

1. Click **start** — **All Programs**.

2. Select **EPSON**.

3. Select your printer.

4. Select **Activate Status Monitor**.

    The **Printer Selection** window appears.

5. Click the name of the desired printer from the list.

    The **Printer Status** window appears.

6. Click **Help**.

See Also:
"Status Monitor (Windows Only)" on page 37

Checking Status in EpsonNet Config (Windows & Mac OS X) (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/ CX17WF Only)

You can check the status of the print job sent to the printer at the **Jobs** tab of EpsonNet Config.

See Also:
"Printer Management Software" on page 35

Printing a Report Page

You can print a various types of reports and lists. For details on each report and list, see "Report / List" on page 250.

Taking the System Settings page as an example, this section describes two methods of printing a report page.

Printing a System Settings Page

To verify detailed printer settings, print a System Settings page.

The Operator Panel

Note:
The reports and lists are all printed in English.

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Report ⁄ List, and then press the (OK) button.

3. Select System Settings, and then press the (OK) button.

    The System Settings page is printed.

The Printer Setting Utility

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

Note:
The reports and lists are all printed in English.

1. Click **start** — **All Programs** — **EPSON** — your printer — **Printer Setting Utility**.

    Note:
    The window to select a printer appears in this step, when multiple print drivers are installed on your
    *computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.*

    The Printer Setting Utility appears.

2. Click the **Printer Settings Report** tab.

3. Select **Reports** from the list at the left side of the page.

    The **Reports** page is displayed.

4. Click **System Settings**.

    The System Settings page is printed.

Printer Settings

Using the Operator Panel to Change the Printer Settings

You can select menu items and corresponding values from the operator panel.

When you first enter the menus from the operator panel, you see a list of menu items. The value
displayed on the right of each menu item is the factory default menu setting. These settings are the
original printer settings.

Note:
Factory defaults may vary for different countries.

To select a new value as a default menu setting:

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select the desired menu, and then press the (OK) button.

3. Select the desired menu or menu item, and then press the (OK) button.

❏ If the selection is a menu, the menu is opened and the list of menu items appears.

❏ If the selection is a menu item, the default menu setting for the menu item is displayed with a highlight.

Each menu item has a list of values for the menu item. A value can be:

❏ A phrase or word to describe a setting

❏ A numerical value that can be changed

❏ An On or Off setting

4. Select the desired value.

5. Press the ⓞⓚ button to enable the setting value.

The value is displayed on the right of the menu item in the previous screen to identify it as the current user default menu setting.

6. To continue setting other items, select the desired menu. Press the ↺ (**Back**) or ◀ button to return to the previous menu.

To quit setting new values, press the **System** button, and then press the ↺ (**Back**) or ◀ button to return to the Select Function screen.

These settings are active until new ones are selected or the factory defaults are restored.

Driver settings may have precedence over changes previously made. In such case, change the defaults of the operator panel.

Using the Printer Setting Utility to Change the Printer Settings

You can select menu items and corresponding values from the Printer Setting Utility.

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

Note:
Factory defaults may vary for different countries.
These settings are active until new ones are selected or the factory defaults are restored.

To select a new value as a setting:

1. Click **start** — **All Programs** — **EPSON** — your printer — **Printer Setting Utility**.

Note:
The window to select a printer appears in this step, when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name***.*

The Printer Setting Utility appears.

2. Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.

3. Select the desired menu item.

    Each menu item has a list of values for the menu item. A value can be:

    ❏ A phrase or word to describe a setting

    ❏ A numerical value that can be changed

    ❏ An On or Off setting

4. Select the desired value, and then click the **Apply New Settings** or **Restart printer to apply new settings** button.

    Driver settings may have precedence over changes previously made and may require you to change the Printer Setting Utility defaults.

Adjusting the Language

To display a different language on the operator panel:

The Operator Panel

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Panel Language, and then press the (OK) button.

3. Select the desired language, and then press the (OK) button.

The Printer Setting Utility

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

1. Click **start** — **All Programs** — **EPSON** — your printer — **Printer Setting Utility**.

Note:
*The window to select a printer appears in this step, when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.*

The Printer Setting Utility appears.

2. Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.

3. Select **System Settings** from the list at the left side of the page.

   The **System Settings** page is displayed.

4. Select the desired language from **Panel Language**, and then click the **Apply New Settings** button.

Printing with Web Services on Devices (WSD) (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)

This section provides information for network printing with WSD, the new Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, and Windows 7 protocol of Microsoft.

Adding Roles of Print Services

When you use Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2, you need to add the roles of print services to the Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2 client.

For Windows Server 2008:

1. Click **Start** — **Administrative Tools** — **Server Manager**.

2. From the **Action** menu, select **Add Roles**.

3. Select the **Print Services** check box on the **Server Roles** window in the **Add Roles Wizard**, and then click **Next**.

4. Click **Next**.

5. Select the **Print Server** check box, and then click **Next**.

6. Click **Install**.

For Windows Server 2008 R2:

1. Click **Start** — **Administrative Tools** — **Server Manager**.

2. From the **Action** menu, select **Add Roles**.

3. Select the **Print and Document Services** check box on the **Server Roles** window in the **Add Roles Wizard**, and then click **Next**.

4. Click **Next**.

5. Select the **Print Server** check box, and then click **Next**.

6. Click **Install**.

Printer Setup

You can install your new printer on the network using the *Software Disc* that shipped with your printer, or using **Add Printer** Wizard.

Installing a Print Driver Using the Add Printer Wizard

1. Click **Start** — **Control Panel** — **Hardware and Sound** — **Printers** (**Start** — **Devices and Printers** for Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7).

2. Click **Add a printer** to launch the **Add Printer** Wizard.

3. Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.

4. In the list of available printers, select the one you want to use, and then click **Next**.

    Note:
    ❏ *In the list of available printers, the WSD printer is displayed in the form of **http://**IP address**/ws/**.*

❏ *If no WSD printer is displayed in the list, enter the printer's IP address manually to create a WSD printer. To enter the printer's IP address manually, follow the instructions below. For Windows Server 2008 R2, to create a WSD printer, you must be a member of Administrators group.*
1. Click **The printer that I want isn't listed***.*
2. Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or hostname** *and click* **Next***.*
3. Select **Web Services Device** *from* **Device type***.*
4. Enter the printer's IP address in the **Hostname or IP address** *text box and click* **Next***.*

❏ *Before installing the driver using the* **Add Printer** *wizard on Windows Server 2008 R2 or Windows 7, perform one of the followings:*
- Establish the Internet connection so that Windows Update can scan your computer.
- Add the print driver to your computer in advance.

5. If prompted, install the print driver on your computer. If you are prompted for an administrator password or confirmation, type the password or provide confirmation.

6. Complete the additional steps in the wizard, and then click **Finish**.

7. Print a test page to verify print installation.

   a Click **Start** — **Control Panel** — **Hardware and Sound** — **Printers** (**Start** — **Devices and Printers** for Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7).

   b Right-click the printer you just created, and then click **Properties** (**Printer properties** for Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7).

   c On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**. When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

Chapter 6

Copying

Loading Paper for Copying

The instructions for loading print documents are the same whether you are printing, faxing, or copying. (The fax feature is available only on the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF.)

See Also:
❏ *"Usable Print Media" on page 116*

❏ *"Loading Print Media" on page 118*

Preparing a Document

You can use the document glass or the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) to load an original document for copying, scanning and sending a fax. (The ADF and fax feature are available only on the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF.) You can load up to 15 sheets of 64 gsm documents for one job using the ADF or one sheet at a time using the document glass.

Important:
❏ *Avoid loading documents that are smaller than 148.0 ×210.0 mm (5.83 ×8.27 inch) or larger than 215.9 ×355.6 mm (8.5 ×14 inch), different sizes or weights together, booklets, pamphlets, transparencies, or documents having other unusual characteristics in ADF.*

❏ *Carbon-paper or carbon-backed paper, coated paper, onion skin or thin paper, wrinkled or creased paper, curled or rolled paper or torn paper cannot be used in ADF.*

❏ *Do not use the documents with staples, paper clips or exposed to adhesives or solvent based materials such as glue, ink and correcting fluid in ADF.*

Note:
To get the best scan quality, especially for color or gray scale images, use the document glass instead of the ADF.

Making Copies From the Document Glass

Note:
❏ *A computer connection is not required for copying.*

❏ *For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF, ensure that no document is in the ADF. If any document is detected in the ADF, it takes priority over the document on the document glass.*

❏ *Contaminants on the document glass may cause black spots on the copy printout. For best results, clean the document glass before use. For more information, see "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 355.*

To make a copy from the document glass:
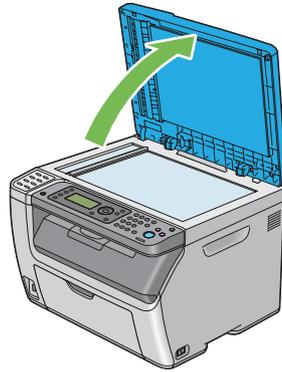
1. Open the document cover.

2. Place the document face down on the document glass and align it with the registration guide on the top left corner of the document glass.

> ⚠ **Caution:**
> *Do not apply excessive force to hold thick document on the document glass. It may break the glass and cause injuries.*
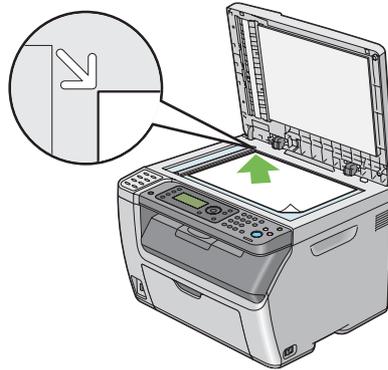
3. Close the document cover.

   Note:
   ❏ *Leaving the document cover open while copying may affect the copy quality and increase the toner consumption.*

   ❏ *If you are copying a page from a book or magazine, lift the document cover until its hinges are caught by the stopper, and then close the document cover. If the book or magazine is thicker than 20 mm, start copying with the document cover open.*

4. Press the ❦ (**Copy**) button.

5. Customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size, and image quality.

   See Also:
   "Setting Copy Options" on page 160

   To clear the settings, use the ⚡(**Clear All**) button.

6. Press the ◇ (**Start**) button to begin copying.

Note:
*Press the ⊖ (**Stop**) button to cancel a copy job at any time while scanning a document.*

Making Copies From the ADF (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)

Important:
Do not load more than 15 sheets into the ADF or allow more than 15 sheets to be fed to the document output tray. The document output tray should be emptied before it exceeds 15 sheets or your original documents may be damaged.

Note:
❏ *To get the best scan quality, especially for color or gray scale images, use the document glass instead of the ADF.*

❏ *A computer connection is not required for copying.*

❏ *You cannot load the following documents in the ADF. Be sure to place them on the document glass.*

	Curled originals		Pre-punched paper
	Lightweight originals		Folded, creased or torn originals
	Cut and paste originals		Carbon paper

To make copy from the ADF:

1. Load up to 15 sheets of 64 gsm documents face up on the ADF with top edge of the documents in first. Then adjust the document guides to the correct document size.
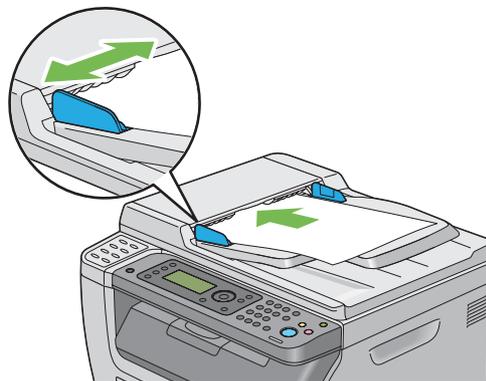
Note:
Ensure that you use the document guides before copying a legal-size document.

2. Press the (**Copy**) button.

3. Customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size, and image quality.

   See Also:
   "Setting Copy Options" on page 160

   To clear the settings, use the ⟋ (**Clear All**) button.

4. Press the ◇ (**Start**) button to begin copying.

   Note:
   *Press the ⊘ (**Stop**) button to cancel a copy job at any time while scanning a document.*

Setting Copy Options

Set the following options for the current copy job before pressing the ◇ (**Start**) button to make copies.

Note:
After a copy job is completed, the copy options would be kept until the screen returns to Select
Function *(auto-reset or the ↰ (**Back**) button is pressed), the ⟋ (**Clear All**) button is pressed, or the ◈ (**Copy**) button is pressed again.*

Number of Copies

You can specify the number of copies from 1 to 99.

1. For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

   For the Epson AcuLaser CX17, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

   See Also:
   ❏ *"Making Copies From the ADF (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)" on page 159*

   ❏ *"Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 157*

2. Press the ◈ (**Copy**) button.

3.   Enter the number of copies using the numeric keypad.

4.   If necessary, customize the copy settings including the copy size, and image quality.

See Also:
"Setting Copy Options" on page 160

5.   Press the ◇ (**Start**) button to begin copying.

Color

You can select a mode from color or black and white copying.

1.   For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

     For the Epson AcuLaser CX17, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

     See Also:
     ❏ *"Making Copies From the ADF (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)" on page 159*

     ❏ *"Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 157*

2.   Press the ◈ (**Copy**) button.

3.   Press the **Color Mode** button to select the desired color mode.

4.   If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size, and image quality.

     See Also:
     "Setting Copy Options" on page 160

5.   Press the ◇ (**Start**) button to begin copying.

Collated

You can sort the copy output. For example, if you make two copies of three page documents, one complete three page document will print followed by the second complete document.
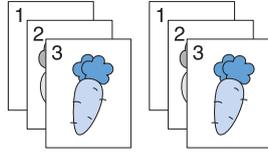
Note:
Copying documents with a large amount of data may exhaust available memory. If a memory shortage occurs, cancel the collating by turning Collated *to* Uncollated *on the operator panel.*

1. For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

    For the Epson AcuLaser CX17, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

    See Also:
    ❏ *"Making Copies From the ADF (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)" on page 159*

    ❏ *"Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 157*

2. Press the ◈ (**Copy**) button.

3. Select Collated, and then press the (OK) button.

4. Select the desired setting, and then press the (OK) button.

    Note:
    Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Uncollated*	Does not sort the copy job.
Collated	Sorts the copy job.

5. If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size, and image quality.

See Also:
"Setting Copy Options" on page 160

6.   Press the ◇ (**Start**) button to begin copying.

Reduce/Enlarge

You can reduce or enlarge the size of a copied image, from 25% to 400%.

Note:
❏ *When you make a reduced copy, black lines may appear at the bottom of your copy.*

❏ *This item is available only when* N-Up *is set to* Off *or* Manual*.*

1.   For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

     For the Epson AcuLaser CX17, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

     See Also:
     ❏ *"Making Copies From the ADF (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)" on page 159*

     ❏ *"Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 157*

2.   Press the ♦ (**Copy**) button.

3.   Select Reduce/Enlarge, and then press the ⓞⓚ button.

4.   Select the desired settings, and then press the ⓞⓚ button.

     mm series

     Note:
     Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

200%
A5 -> A4(141%)
A5 -> B5(122%)

100%*
B5 -> A5(81%)
A4 -> A5(70%)
50%

inch series

200%
Stmt -> Lgl(154%)
Stmt -> Ltr(129%)
100%*
Lgl -> Ltr (78%)
Ldgr -> Ltr(64%)
50%

Note:
You can also use the numeric keypad to input the desired zoom ratio from 25% to 400%, or press the
▶ *button to enlarge the zoom ratio or press the* ◀ *button to reduce the zoom ratio in 1% intervals. See the following table for specific zoom ratios.*

		copy		
		A5	**B5**	**A4**
original	**A5**	100%	122%	141%
	B5	81%	100%	115%
	A4	70%	86%	100%

The methods to load print media vary depending on the size and orientation of the print media. For details, refer to "Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 119 or "Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 127.

For print media that can be loaded, refer to "Usable Print Media" on page 116.

5. If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, and image quality.

See Also:
"Setting Copy Options" on page 160

6. Press the ◇ (**Start**) button to begin copying.

Document Size

You can specify the default document size.

1. For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

   For the Epson AcuLaser CX17, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

   See Also:
   ❏ *"Making Copies From the ADF (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)" on page 159*

   ❏ *"Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 157*

2. Press the ❧ (**Copy**) button.

3. Select `Document Size`, and then press the ⊙ᴋ button.

4. Select the desired settings, and then press the ⊙ᴋ button.

   Note:
   Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

A4 (210 × 297mm)*
A5 (148 × 210mm)
B5 (182 × 257mm)
Letter (8.5 × 11")
Folio (8.5 × 13") (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF only)
Legal (8.5 × 14") (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF only)

> **Executive (7.25 × 10.5")**

5.   If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size, and image quality.

See Also:
"Setting Copy Options" on page 160

6.   Press the ◇ (**Start**) button to begin copying.

Document Type

You can select the copy image quality.

1.   For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

   For the Epson AcuLaser CX17, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

   See Also:
   ❏   *"Making Copies From the ADF (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)" on page 159*

   ❏   *"Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 157*

2.   Press the ◈ (**Copy**) button.

3.   Select Document Type, and then press the (OK) button.

4.   Select the desired settings, and then press the (OK) button.

   Note:
   Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Text	Suitable for documents with text.
Mixed*	Suitable for documents with both text and photos/gray tones.
Photo	Suitable for documents with photos.

5. If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, and copy size.

    See Also:
    "Setting Copy Options" on page 160

6. Press the ◇ (**Start**) button to begin copying.

Lighten/Darken

You can adjust the copy density level to make the copy lighter or darker than the original.

1. For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

    For the Epson AcuLaser CX17, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

    See Also:
    ❏ *"Making Copies From the ADF (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)" on page 159*

    ❏ *"Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 157*

2. Press the ◈ (**Copy**) button.

3. Select Lighten/Darken, and then press the ⊙ button.

4. Select the desired settings, and then press the ⊙ button.

    Note:
    Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Lighten2	Makes the copy lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
Lighten1	
Normal*	Works well with standard type or printed documents.
Darken1	Makes the copy darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darken2	

5. If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size, and image quality.

   See Also:
   "Setting Copy Options" on page 160

6. Press the ◇ (**Start**) button to begin copying.

Sharpness

You can adjust the sharpness to make the copy sharper or softer than the original.

1. For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

   For the Epson AcuLaser CX17, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

   See Also:
   ❏ *"Making Copies From the ADF (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)" on page 159*

   ❏ *"Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 157*

2. Press the ◈ (**Copy**) button.

3. Select Sharpness, and then press the ⓞⓚ button.

4. Select the desired settings, and then press the ⓞⓚ button.

   Note:
   Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Sharpest	Makes the copy sharper than the original.
Sharper	
Normal*	Does not make the copy sharper or softer than the original.
Softer	Makes the copy softer than the original.
Softest	

5. If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size, and image quality.

   See Also:
   "Setting Copy Options" on page 160

6. Press the ◇ (**Start**) button to begin copying.

Auto Exposure

You can suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.

1. For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

   For the Epson AcuLaser CX17, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

   See Also:
   ❏ *"Making Copies From the ADF (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)" on page 159*

   ❏ *"Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 157*

2. Press the ◈ (**Copy**) button.

3. Select Auto Exposure, and then press the ⓞⓚ button.

4. Select On, and then press the ⓞⓚ button.

5. If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size, and image quality.

   See Also:
   "Setting Copy Options" on page 160

6. Press the ◇ (**Start**) button to begin copying.

Color Balance R

You can specify the default color balance level of red within the range of -2 to +2.

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Defaults Settings, and then press the (ok) button.

3. Select Copy Defaults, and then press the (ok) button.

4. Select Color Balance R, and then press the (ok) button.

5. Select the desired value, and then press the (ok) button.

Color Balance G

You can specify the default color balance level of green within the range of -2 to +2.

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Defaults Settings, and then press the (ok) button.

3. Select Copy Defaults, and then press the (ok) button.

4. Select Color Balance G, and then press the (ok) button.

5. Select the desired value, and then press the (ok) button.

Color Balance B

You can specify the default color balance level of blue within the range of -2 to +2.

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Defaults Settings, and then press the (ok) button.

3. Select Copy Defaults, and then press the (ok) button.

4. Select Color Balance B, and then press the (ok) button.

5.   Select the desired value, and then press the (ok) button.

Gray Balance

You can specify the default gray balance level within the range of -2 to +2.

Note:
This option is effective only for black and white copying.

1.   Press the **System** button.

2.   Select Defaults Settings, and then press the (ok) button.

3.   Select Copy Defaults, and then press the (ok) button.

4.   Select Gray Balance, and then press the (ok) button.

5.   Select the desired value, and then press the (ok) button.

N-Up

You can print two original images to fit onto one sheet of paper.
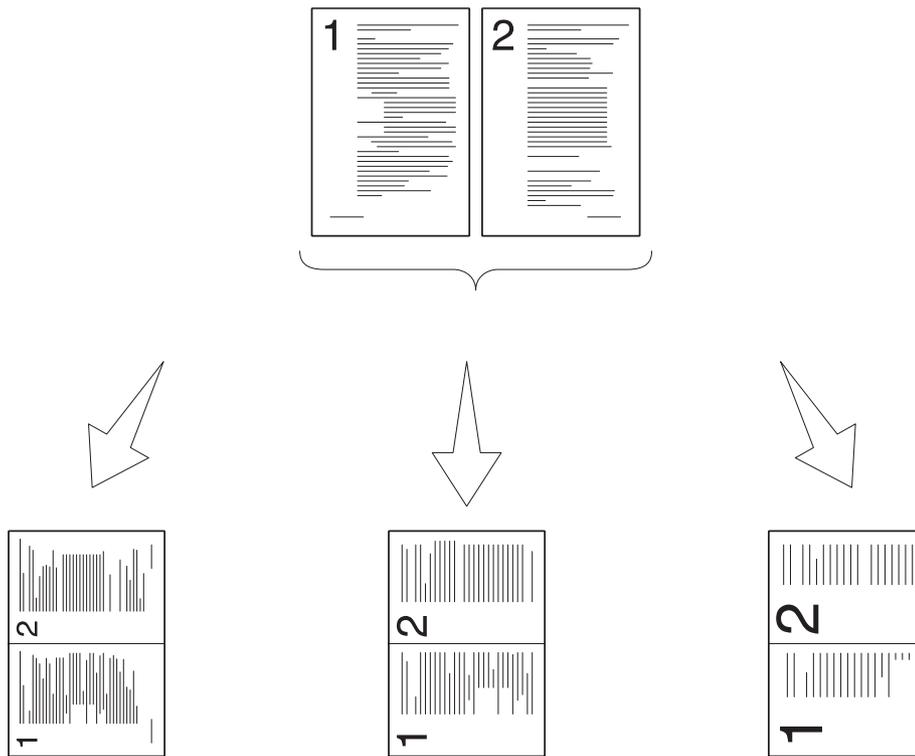
Auto:

Automatically reduces the pages to fit in one page.

ID Card Copy:

Always prints two sides of the ID card in one page in the original size (by 100%).

Manual:

Reduces the pages in the custom size depending on the setting of the Reduce/ Enlarge menu.

1. For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

   For the Epson AcuLaser CX17, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

   See Also:
   ❏ *"Making Copies From the ADF (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)" on page 159*

   ❏ *"Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 157*

2. Press the ◈ (**Copy**) button.

3. Select N-Up, and then press the (OK) button.

4. Select the desired setting, and then press the (OK) button.

    Note:
    Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Off*	Does not perform N-Up printing.
Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
ID Card Copy	Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the original size.
Manual	Prints the original pages onto the one sheet of paper in the size specified in Reduce/Enlarge.

5. If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size (only for Off or Manual), and image quality.

    See Also:
    "Setting Copy Options" on page 160

6. Press the ◇ (**Start**) button to begin copying.

    When you are using the document glass and N-Up is set to Auto, ID Card Copy, or Manual, the display prompts you for another page. Select Yes or No, and then press the (OK) button.

    If you select Yes, select Continue or Cancel, and then press the (OK) button.

Margin Top/Bottom

You can specify the top and bottom margins of the copy.

1. For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

    For the Epson AcuLaser CX17, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

    See Also:
    ❏ *"Making Copies From the ADF (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)" on page 159*

❏ *"Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 157*

2. Press the ◈ (**Copy**) button.

3. Select Margin Top/Bottom, and then press the ⊙ button.

4. Press the ▲ or ▼ button or enter the desired value using the numeric keypad, and then press the
    ⊙ button.

    Note:
    Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

4mm*/0.2 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
0-50mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

5. If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size, and image
    quality.

    See Also:
    "Setting Copy Options" on page 160

6. Press the ◇ (**Start**) button to begin copying.

Margin Left/Right

You can specify the left and right margins of the copy.

1. For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first
    into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document
    cover.

    For the Epson AcuLaser CX17, place a single document face down on the document glass, and
    close the document cover.

    See Also:
    ❏ *"Making Copies From the ADF (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)" on page 159*

    ❏ *"Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 157*

2. Press the ◈ (**Copy**) button.

3. Select Margin Left/Right, and then press the (OK) button.

4. Press the ▲ or ▼ button or enter the desired value using the numeric keypad, and then press the (OK) button.

    Note:
    Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

4mm*/0.2 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
0-50mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

5. If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size, and image quality.

    See Also:
    "Setting Copy Options" on page 160

6. Press the ◇ (**Start**) button to begin copying.

Margin Middle

You can specify the middle margin of the copy.

1. For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

    For the Epson AcuLaser CX17, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

    See Also:
    ❏ *"Making Copies From the ADF (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)" on page 159*

    ❏ *"Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 157*

2. Press the ◈ (**Copy**) button.

3. Select Margin Middle, and then press the (OK) button.

4. Press the ▲ or ▼ button or enter the desired value using the numeric keypad, and then press the (ok) button.

    Note:
    Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

0mm*/0.0 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
0-50mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

5. If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size, and image quality.

    See Also:
    "Setting Copy Options" on page 160

6. Press the ◇ (**Start**) button to begin copying.

Changing the Default Settings

The COPY menu options, including color mode, and image quality can be set to the most frequently used modes.

To create your own default settings:

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Defaults Settings, and then press the (ok) button.

3. Select Copy Defaults, and then press the (ok) button.

4. Select the desired menu item, and then press the (ok) button.

5. Select the desired setting or enter the value using the numeric keypad, and then press the (ok) button.

6. Repeat steps 4 and 5, as needed.

7. To return to the previous screen, press the ゥ (**Back**) button.

Chapter 7
Scanning

Scanning Overview

You can use your printer to turn pictures and text into editable images on your computer.

The resolution setting to use when you scan an item depends on the item type and how you plan to use the image or document after you scan it into your computer. For the best results, use these recommended settings.

Type	Resolution
Documents	300 dpi black-and-white or 200 dpi grayscale or color
Documents of poor quality or that contain small text	400 dpi black-and-white or 300 dpi grayscale
Photographs and pictures	100–200 dpi color or 200 dpi grayscale
Images for an inkjet printer	150–300 dpi
Images for a high-resolution printer	300–600 dpi

Scanning beyond these recommended resolutions may exceed the capabilities of the application. If you require a resolution above those recommended in the above table, you should reduce the size of the image by previewing (or pre-scan) and cropping before scanning the image.

Scanning to a USB Connected Computer

Scanning From the Operator Panel

The following procedure uses Microsoft® Windows® XP as an example.

Note:
❏ *Ensure that the printer is connected to the computer using the USB cable.*

❏ *You must use Express Scan Manager on your computer to configure the output destination of the scanned image files.*

1. For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

    For the Epson AcuLaser CX17, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

    See Also:
    ❏ *"Making Copies From the ADF (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)" on page 159*

    ❏ *"Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 157*

2. Press the ◇ (**Scan**) button.

3. Select Scan to Computer(USB), and then press the ⊙κ button.

4. Configure the scanning settings as necessary.

5. Press the ◇ (**Start**) button.

    The scanned image file is generated.

    Note:
    *If the following dialog box appears on your computer, select **Express Scan Manager-Btype**, and then click **OK**. Once you select the **Always use this program for this action** check box when selecting **Express Scan Manager-Btype**, the selected application is automatically used without displaying the program selection window.*

See Also:
"Express Scan Manager" on page 40

Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver

Your printer supports the Tool Without An Interesting Name (TWAIN) driver for scanning images. TWAIN is one of the standard components provided by Windows XP, Windows Server® 2003, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Vista®, Windows 7, and Mac OS® X 10.4/10.5/10.6, and works with various scanners. The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

Note:
❏ *Ensure that the printer is connected to the computer using the USB cable.*

❏ *When using the printer as a network printer, you can also scan document(s) via network protocol instead of the USB cable.*

The following procedure to scan an image uses Microsoft Clip Organizer as an example.

1. For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

   For the Epson AcuLaser CX17, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

   See Also:
   ❏ *"Making Copies From the ADF (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)" on page 159*

   ❏ *"Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 157*

2. Click **start** — **All Programs** — **Microsoft Office** — **Microsoft Office 2010 Tools** — **Microsoft Clip Organizer**.

3. Click **File** — **Add Clips to Organizer** — **From Scanner or Camera**.

4. In the **Insert Picture from Scanner or Camera** dialog box, under **Device**, select your TWAIN device.

5. Click **Custom Insert**.

6. Select your scanning preferences and click **Preview** to display the preview image.

Note:
❏ *For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF,* **Preview** *is grayed out and disabled when you select* **Document Feeder Tray** *from* **Scan From***.*

❏ *The illustration may vary for different operating systems.*
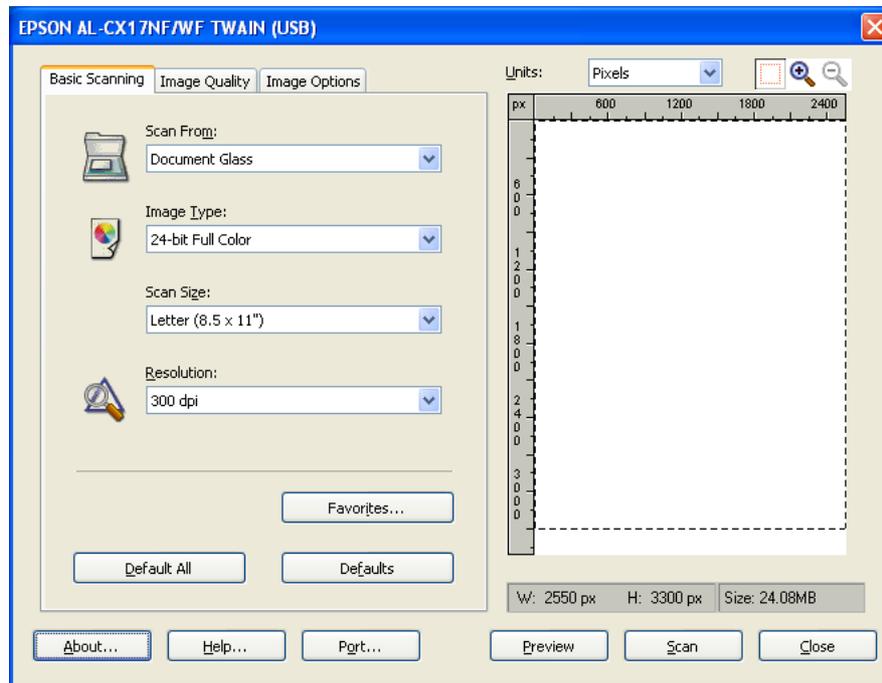
7. Select the desired properties from the **Image Quality** and **Image Options** tabs.

8. Click **Scan** to start scanning.

The scanned image file is generated.

Scanning Using the WIA Driver

Your printer also supports the Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) driver for scanning images. WIA is one of the standard components provided by Windows XP and later operating systems and works with digital cameras and scanners. Unlike the TWAIN driver, the WIA driver allows you to scan an image and easily manipulate those images without using additional software.

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

Note:
Ensure that the printer is connected to the computer using the USB cable.

1. For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

   For the Epson AcuLaser CX17, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.
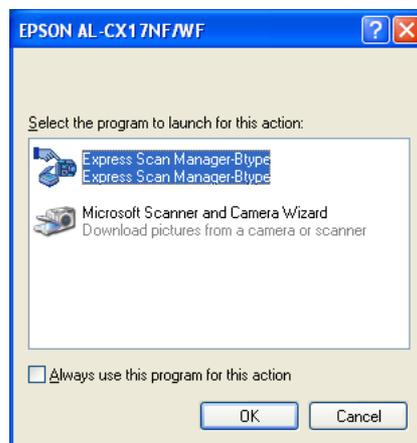
   See Also:
   ❏ *"Making Copies From the ADF (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)" on page 159*

   ❏ *"Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 157*

2. Start the drawing software, such as Paint for Windows.

   Note:
   When you use Windows Vista, use Windows Photo Gallery instead of Paint.

3. Click **File** — **From Scanner or Camera** (**Paint** button — **From scanner or camera** for Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7).

   The WIA window appears.

   Note:
   The illustration may vary for different operating systems.
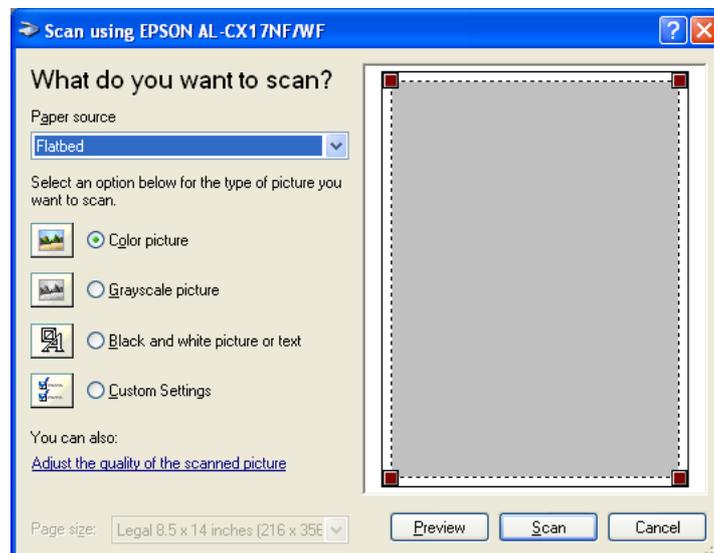
4. Select your scanning preferences and click **Adjust the quality of the scanned picture** to display the **Advanced Properties** dialog box.

5. Select the desired properties including brightness and contrast, and then click **OK**.

6. Click **Scan** to start scanning.

7. Click **Save As** from the **File** menu.

8. Enter a picture name, and select a file format and destination to save the picture.

Using a Scanner on the Network (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF only)

Overview

The Scan to Server/Computer feature allows you to scan documents and send the scanned document to a network computer via the FTP or SMB protocol.
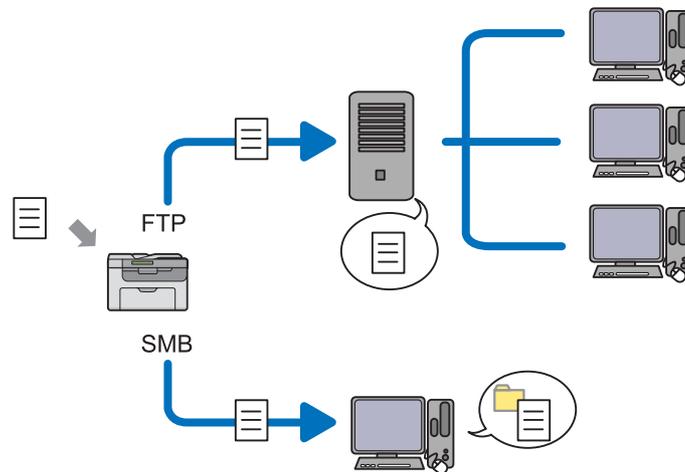
You can select the kind of the server and specify a destination to store the scanned document with the EpsonNet Config or Address Book Editor.

The following items are required to use the Scan to Server/Computer feature.

❏ Using SMB

To transfer data via SMB, your computer must run on one of the following operating systems that includes folder sharing.

For Mac OS X, a shared user account is required on the Mac OS X.

❏ Windows Server 2003

❏ Windows Server 2008

❏ Windows Server 2008 R2

❏ Windows XP

❏ Windows Vista

❏ Windows 7

❏ Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6

❏ Using FTP

To transfer data via FTP, one of the following FTP servers and an account to the FTP server (login name and password) are required.

❏ Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Vista, or Windows 7

FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 6.0

❏ Windows XP

FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Server 3.0/4.0 or Internet Information Services 5.0/5.1

❏ Mac OS X

FTP service of Mac OS X 10.4.2/10.4.4/10.4.8/10.4.9/10.4.10/10.4.11/10.5/10.6

For information on how to configure the FTP service, contact your system administrator.

Follow the procedure below to use the Scan to Server/Computer feature.

Confirming a Login name and Password

When Using SMB

The Scan to Computer/Server feature requires a user login account with a valid and non-empty password for authentication. Confirm a login user name and password.

If you do not use a password for your user login, you need to create a password for your user login account with the following procedure.

For Windows XP:

1. Click **start** — **Control Panel** — **User Accounts**.

2. Click **Change an account**.

3. Select your account.

4. Click **Create a password** and add in a password for your user login account.

For Windows Server 2003:

1. Click **Start** — **Administrative Tools** — **Computer Management**.

2. Click **Local Users and Groups**.

3. Double-click **Users**.

4. Right-click your account, and then select **Set Password**.

    Note:
    *When an alert message appears, confirm the message and then click **Proceed**.*

5. Add in a password for your user login account.

For Windows Vista and Windows 7:

1. Click **Start** — **Control Panel**.

2. Click **User Accounts and Family Safety**.

3. Click **User Accounts**.

4. Click **Create a password** for your account and add in a password for your user login account.

For Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 R2:

1. Click **Start** — **Control Panel**.

2. Click **User Accounts**.

3. Click **User Accounts**.

4. Click **Create a password** for your account and add in a password for your user login account.

For Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6

1. Click **System Preferences** — **Accounts**.

2. Select your account.

3. Select **Change Password**.

4. Enter a password for your user login account in **New Password** (**New password** for Mac OS X 10.6).

5. Re-enter the password in **Verify**.

6. Click **Change Password**.

After you confirmed a login user name and password, go to "Specifying a Destination to Store the Document" on page 186.

When Using FTP

The Scan to Computer/Server feature requires a user name and a password. For your user name and password, contact your system administrator.

Specifying a Destination to Store the Document

When Using SMB

Share a folder to store the scanned document using the following procedure.

For Windows XP Home Edition:

1. Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, **MyShare**).

2. Right-click the folder, and then select **Properties**.

3. Click the **Sharing** tab, and then select **Share this folder on the network**.

4. Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

Note:
Write down this shared name because you will use this name in the next setting procedure.
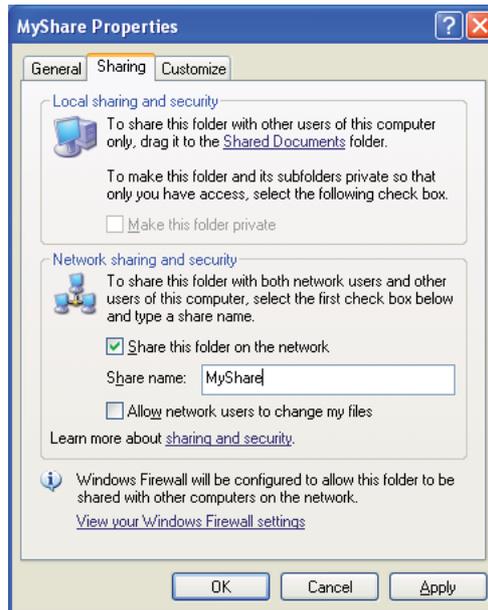
Note:
*When the following screen appears, click **If you understand the security risks but want to share files without running the wizard, click here**, then select **Just enable file sharing**, and then click **OK**.*

5. Select **Allow network users to change my files**.

6. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

Note:
To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.
*Example: Folder name, **MyShare**, Second-level folder name: **MyPic**, Third-level folder name: **John***
*You should now see **MyShare\MyPic\John** in your directory*

After you created a folder, go to "Configuring the Printer Settings" on page 198.

For Windows XP Professional Edition:

1. Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, **MyShare**) and double-click the folder.

2. Select **Folder Options** from **Tools**.
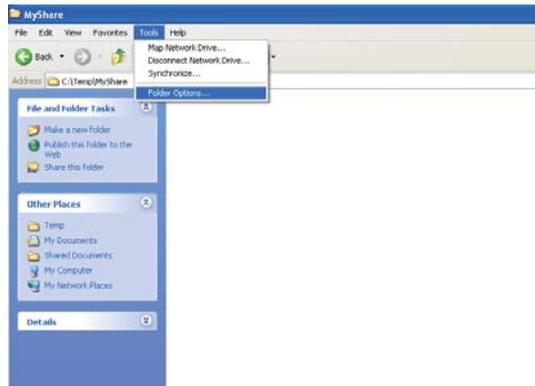
3. Click **View** tab, and then deselect the **Use simple file sharing (Recommended)** check box.
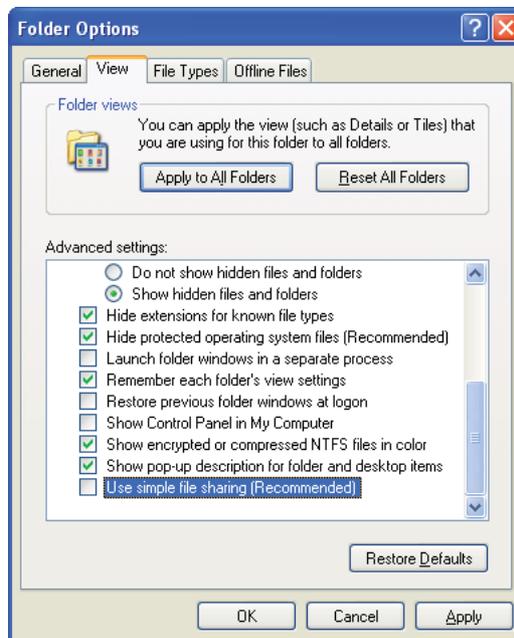
4. Click **OK**, and then close the window.

5. Right-click the folder, and then select **Properties**.

6. Select the **Sharing** tab, and then select **Share this folder**.

7. Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

    Note:
    Write down this shared name because you will use this name in the next setting procedure.

8. Click **Permissions** to create a write permission for this folder.

9. Click **Add**.

10. Search user login name by clicking **Advanced**, or enter the user login name in the **Enter the object names to select** box and click **Check Names** to confirm (Example of user login name, **MySelf**).

Note:
*Do not use **Everyone** as the user login name.*
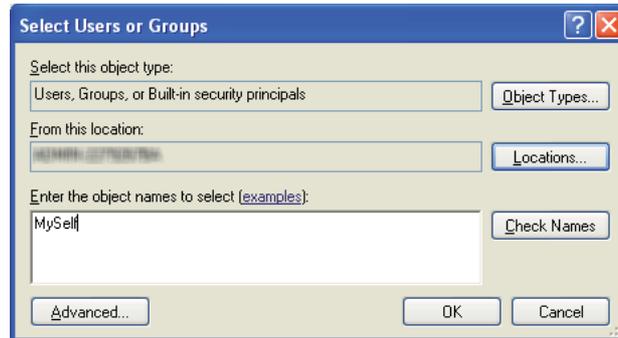
11. Click **OK**.

12. Click the user login name that you have just entered. Select the **Full Control** check box. This will grant you permission to send the document into this folder.
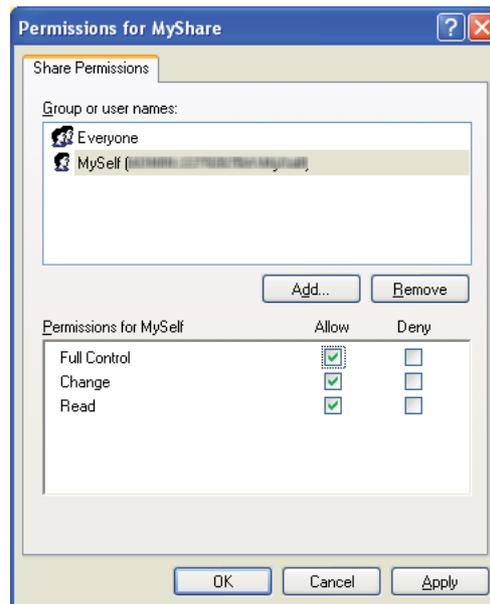
13. Click **OK**.

14. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

Note:
To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.
Example: Folder name: **MyShare***, Second-level folder name:* **MyPic***, Third-level folder name:* **John**
You should now see **MyShare\MyPic\John** *in your directory.*

After you created a folder, go to "Configuring the Printer Settings" on page 198.

For Windows Server 2003

1. Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, **MyShare**).

2. Right-click the folder, and then select **Properties**.

3. Click the **Sharing** tab, and then select the **Share this folder**.

4. Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

    Note:
    Note down the shared name as you need to use this name in the next setting procedure.

5. Click **Permissions** to give write permission for this folder.

6. Click **Add**.

7. Search user login name by clicking **Advanced**, or enter the user login name in the **Enter the object names to select** box and click **Check Names** to confirm (Example of user login name, **MySelf**).

   Note:
   *Do not use **Everyone** as the user login name.*
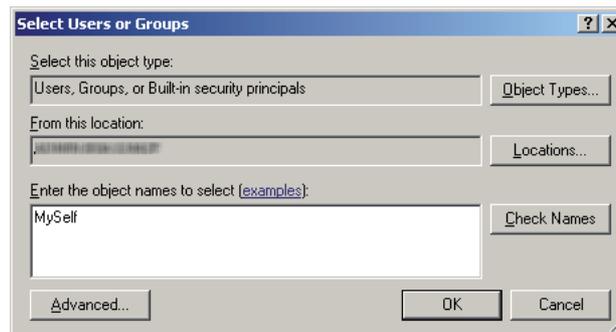
8. Click **OK**.

9. Click the user login name that you have just entered. Select the **Full Control** check box. This will grant you permission to send the document to this folder.
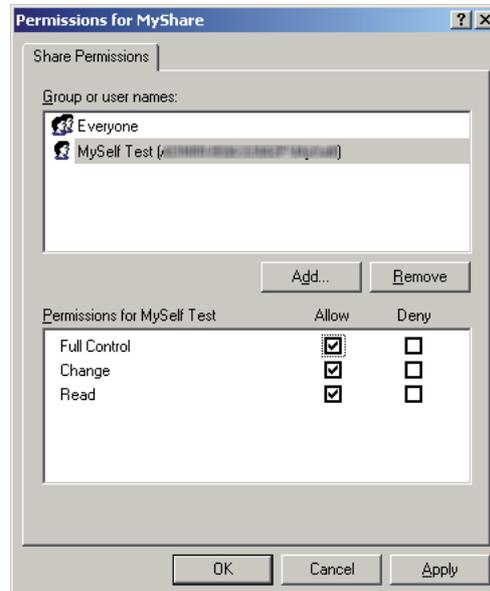
10. Click **OK**.

11. Configure other settings as necessary, and then click **Apply** and click **OK**.

Note:
To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.
*Example: Folder name: **MyShare**, Second-level folder name: **MyPic**, Third-level folder name: **John***
*You should now see **MyShare\MyPic\John** in your directory.*

After you created a folder, go to "Configuring the Printer Settings" on page 198.

For Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2

1. Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, **MyShare**).

2. Right-click the folder, and then select **Properties**.

3. Click the **Sharing** tab, and then select **Advanced Sharing**.

   For Windows Vista, when **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.
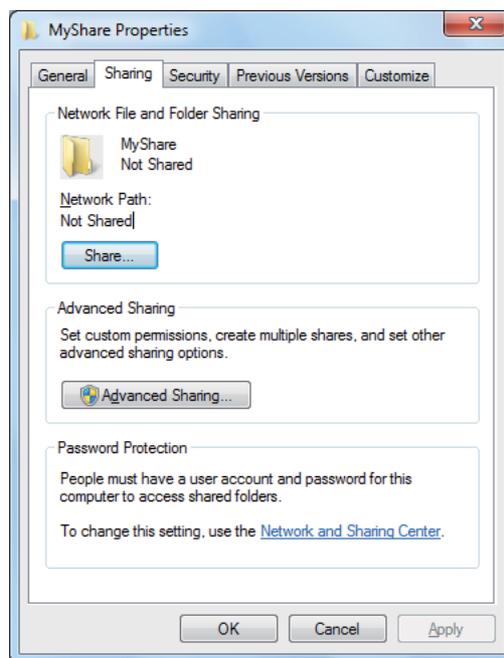
4. Select the **Share this folder** check box.

5. Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

Note:
Note down the shared name as you need to use this name in the next setting procedure.
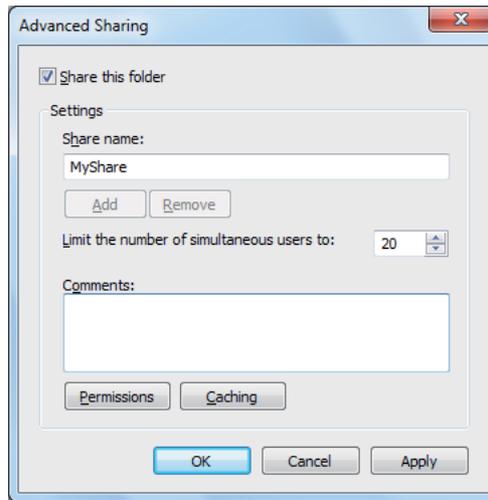
6. Click **Permissions** to give write permission for this folder.

7. Click **Add**.

8. Search user login name by clicking **Advanced**, or enter the user login name in the **Enter the object names to select** box and click **Check Names** to confirm (Example of user login name, **MySelf**).

    Note:
    *Do not use **Everyone** as the user login name.*
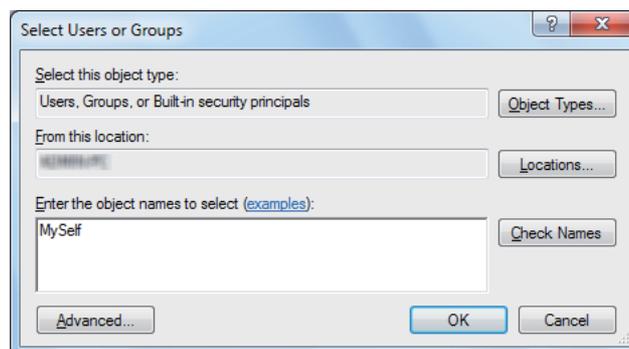
9. Click **OK**.

10. Click the user login name that you have just entered. Select the **Full Control** check box. This will grant you permission to send the document to this folder.
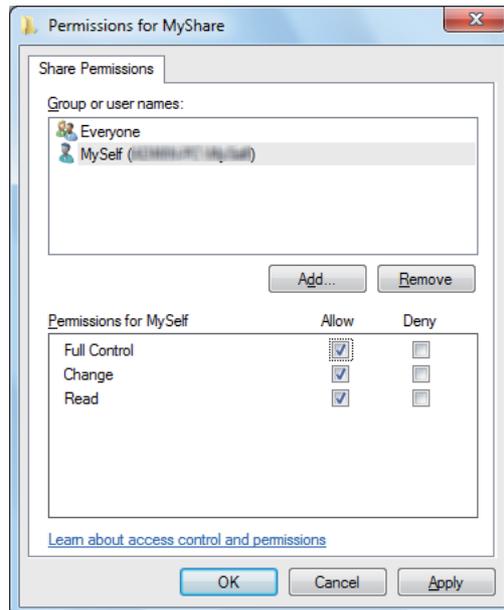
11. Click **OK**.

12. Click **OK** to exit the **Advanced Sharing** dialog box.

13. Click **Close**.

   Note:
   To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.
   *Example: Folder name: **MyShare**, Second-level folder name: **MyPic**, Third-level folder name: **John***
   *You should now see **MyShare\MyPic\John** in your directory.*

After you created a folder, go to "Configuring the Printer Settings" on page 198.

For Mac OS X 10.4:

1. Select **Home** from the **Go** menu.

2. Double-click **Public**.

3. Create a folder (Example of folder name, **MyShare**).

Note:
Note down the folder name as you need to use this name in the next setting procedure.

4. Open **System Preferences**, and then click **Sharing**.

5. Select the **Personal File Sharing** check box and the **Windows Sharing** check box.

For Mac OS X 10.5/10.6:

1. Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, **MyShare**).

   Note:
   Note down the folder name as you need to use this name in the next setting procedure.

2. Select the created folder, and then select **Get Info** from the **File** menu.

3. Select the **Shared Folder** (**Shared folder** for Mac OS X 10.6) check box.

4. Open **Sharing & Permissions**.

5. Click the plus (**+**) sign.

6. Specify an account you want to share, and then click **Select**.

7. Set the **Privilege** of the account to **Read & Write**.

8. Repeat steps 5 to 7 as needed, and then close the window.

9. Open **System Preferences**, and then click **Sharing**.

10. Select the **File Sharing** check box, and then click **Options**.

11. Select the **Share files and folders using SMB** (**Share files and folders using SMB (Windows)** for Mac OS X 10.6) check box and your account name.

12. Enter your account password, and then click **OK**.

13. Click **Done**.

When Using FTP

For a destination to store the document, contact your system administrator.

Configuring the Printer Settings

You can configure the printer settings to use the Scan to Server/Computer feature with the EpsonNet Config or Address Book Editor.

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

From the EpsonNet Config

1. Launch your web browser.

2. Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.

    The printer's web page appears.

    Note:
    For details on how to check the IP address of the printer, see "Verifying the IP Settings" on page 50.

3. Click the **Address Book** tab.

    If user name and password are required, enter the correct user name and password.

    Note:
    The default ID and password are both blank (NULL).
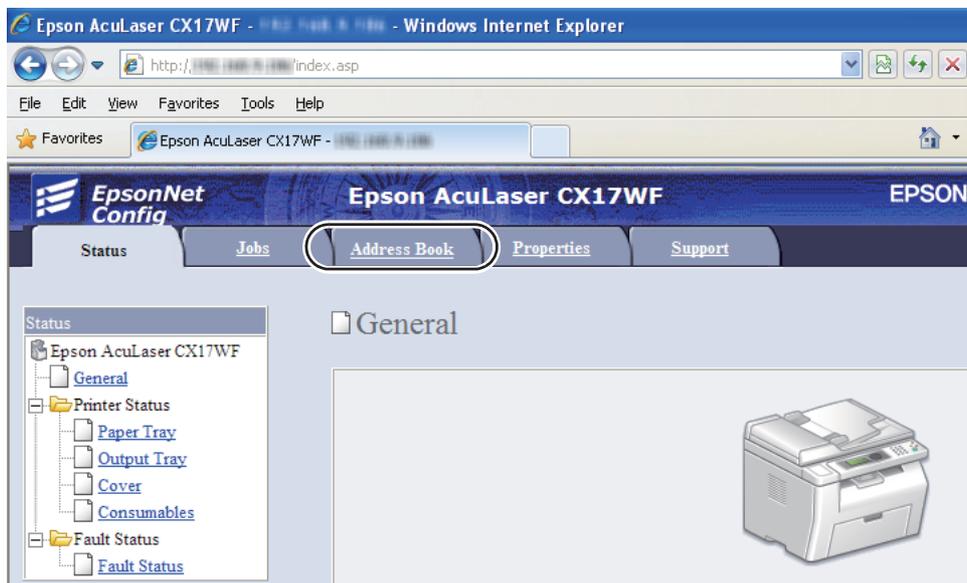
4. Under **Network Scan (Comp./Serv.)**, click **Computer/Server Address Book**.

5. Select any unused number and click **Add**.
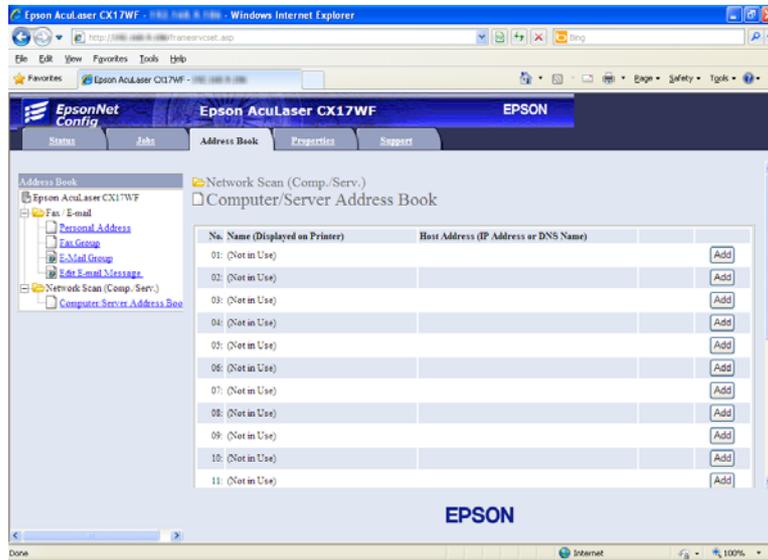
The **Add Network Scan Address** page appears.

To fill in the fields, enter the information as follows:

1	**Name (Displayed on Printer)**	Enter a friendly name that you want it to appear on the Address Book.
2	**Network Type**	Select **Computer SMB** if you store the document in a shared folder of your computer. Select **Server FTP** if you use a FTP server.
3	**Host Address (IP Address or DNS Name)**	Enter a server name or IP address of your computer or the FTP server that you have shared out. The following are examples: ❏ For **Server FTP**: Server name: myhost.example.com (myhost: host name, example.com: domain name) IP address: 192.168.1.100 ❏ For **Computer SMB**: Server name: myhost IP address: 192.168.1.100
4	**Port Number**	Enter the server port number. If you are unsure, you can enter the default value of 139 for SMB and 21 for FTP.
5	**Login Name (if required by host)**	Enter the user account name that has access to the shared folder on your computer or FTP server.
6	**Login Password**	Enter the password corresponding to the above login name. **Note:** Empty password is not valid in the Scan to Computer feature. Ensure that you have a valid password for the user login account. (See "Confirming a Login name and Password" on page 184 for details on how to add a password in your user login account.)
7	**Re-enter Password**	Re-enter your password.
8	**Name of Shared Directory**	For **Computer SMB** only. On the Windows operating system, enter the share name of the folder to store the scanned document on the recipient computer. On the Mac OS, enter the folder name to store the scanned document on the recipient computer.

9	Subdirectory Path (optional)	For **Computer SMB**
		To store the scanned document in the share folder directly without creating any subfolder, leave the space blank.
		To store the scanned document in the folder you created under the share folder, enter the path as following.
		Example: Share Folder name: **MyShare**, Second-level folder name: **MyPic**, Third-level folder name: **John**
		You should now see **MyShare\Mypic\John** in your directory.
		In this case, enter the following item.
		Server Path: **\MyPic\John**
		For **Server (FTP)**
		Enter the server path to store the scanned document.
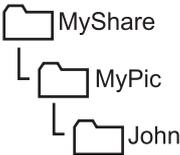
After you configured settings, go to "Sending the Scanned File to the Network" on page 204.

From the Address Book Editor

1. Click **start** — **All Programs** — **EPSON** — your printer — **Address Book Editor**.

    Note:
    ❏ *The window to select a device appears when multiple fax drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Device Name**.*

    ❏ *The **Enter Password** window appears when* Panel Lock Set *is set to* Enable*. In this case, enter the password you specified, and click **OK**.*

2. Click **OK** on the "Retrieval Successful" message window.

3. Click **Tool** — **New (Device Address Book)** — **Server**.
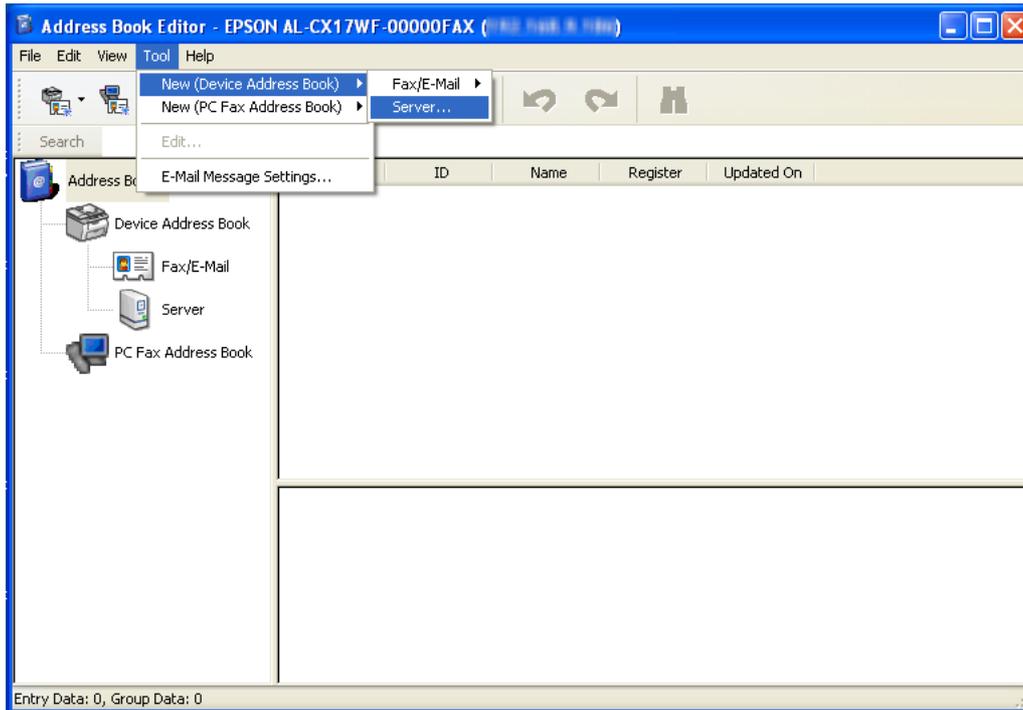
The **Server Address** dialog box appears.

To fill in the fields, enter the information as follows:

1	**Name**	Enter a friendly name that you want it to appear on the Address Book.
2	**Server Type**	Select **Computer** if you store the document in a shared folder of your computer.
		Select **Server** if you use a FTP server.
3	**Computer Settings wizard**	For **Computer** only.
		Clicking this button opens the wizard screen which guides you through several steps.
		When you complete the steps in the wizard, the settings for **Server Address** are automatically configured. For details, click the **Help** button.
4	**Server Name / IP Address**	Enter a server name or IP address of your computer or the FTP server that you have shared out.
		The following are examples:
		❏ For **Computer**:
		Server name: myhost
		IP address: 192.168.1.100
		❏ For **Server**:
		Server name: myhost.example.com
		(myhost: host name, example.com: domain name)
		IP address: 192.168.1.100
5	**Share Name**	For **Computer** only.
		Enter the name of the shared folder on the recipient computer.

6	**Path**	For **Computer**
		To store the scanned document in the share folder directly without creating any subfolder, leave the space blank.
		To store the scanned document in the folder you created under the share folder, enter the path as following.
		Example: Share Folder name: **MyShare**, Second-level folder name: **MyPic**, Third-level folder name: **John**
		You should now see **MyShare\MyPic\John** in your directory.
		MyShare └ MyPic └ John
		In this case, enter the following item.
		Path: **\MyPic\John**
		For **Server**
		Enter the path to store the scanned document.
7	**Login Name**	Enter the user account name that has access to the shared folder on your computer or FTP server.
8	**Login Password**	Enter the password corresponding to the above login name.
		Note: Empty password is not valid in the Scan to Server/Computer feature. Ensure that you have a valid password for the user login account. (See "Confirming a Login name and Password" on page 184 for details on how to add a password in your user login account).
9	**Confirm Login Password**	Re-enter your password.
10	**Port Number**	Enter the port number. If you are unsure, you can enter the default value of 139 for SMB and 21 for FTP.
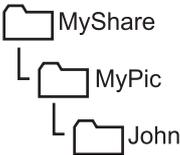
After you configured settings, go to "Sending the Scanned File to the Network" on page 204.

Sending the Scanned File to the Network

1. Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass.

   See Also:
   ❏ *"Making Copies From the ADF (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)" on page 159*

❏ *"Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 157*

2. Press the ◊ (**Scan**) button.

3. Select Scan to Network, and then press the (ok) button.

4. Select Scan to, and then press the (ok) button.

5. Select Computer(Network) or Server(FTP), or Search Address Book, and then press the (ok) button.

    Computer(Network): Stores the scanned image on the computer by using the SMB protocol.

    Server(FTP): Stores the scanned image on the server by using the FTP protocol.

    Search Address Book: Select the server address registered in Address Book.

6. Select the destination to store the scanned file in, and then press the (ok) button.

7. Select scanning options as required.

8. Press the ◊ (**Start**) button to send the scanned files.

Scanning to a USB Storage Device

The Scan to USB Memory feature allows you to scan documents and save the scanned data to a USB storage device. To scan documents and save them, follow the steps below:

1. For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF, load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

    For the Epson AcuLaser CX17, place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

    See Also:
    ❏ *"Making Copies From the ADF (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)" on page 159*

    ❏ *"Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 157*

2. Insert the USB storage device into the front USB port on your printer.
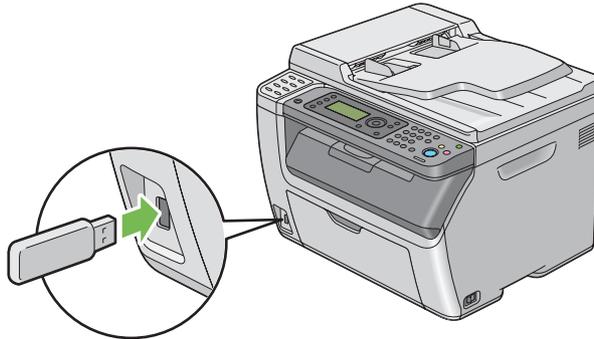
USB Memory appears.

3. Select Scan to, and then press the (ok) button.

4. Select Save to USB Drive or a folder to save file, and then press the (ok) button.

5. Select scanning options as required.

6. Press the ◇ (**Start**) button.

    When the scan is complete, the display prompts you for another page. Select No or Yes, and then press the (ok) button.

    If you select Yes, select Continue or Cancel, and then press the (ok) button.

Sending an E-Mail With the Scanned Image (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/ CX17WF only)

To send an e-mail attached with the scanned image from your printer, follow the steps below:

❏ Setup the E-mail Address Book through the EpsonNet Config. See "Setting a Fax/E-mail Address Book" on page 206 for more details.

Setting a Fax/E-mail Address Book

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

1. Launch your web browser.

2. Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.

   The printer's web page appears.

   Note:
   For details on how to check the IP address of the printer, see "Verifying the IP Settings" on page 50.

3. Click the **Address Book** tab.

   If user name and password are required, enter the correct user name and password.

   Note:
   The default ID and password are both blank (NULL).

4. Under **Fax / E-mail**, click **Personal Address**.
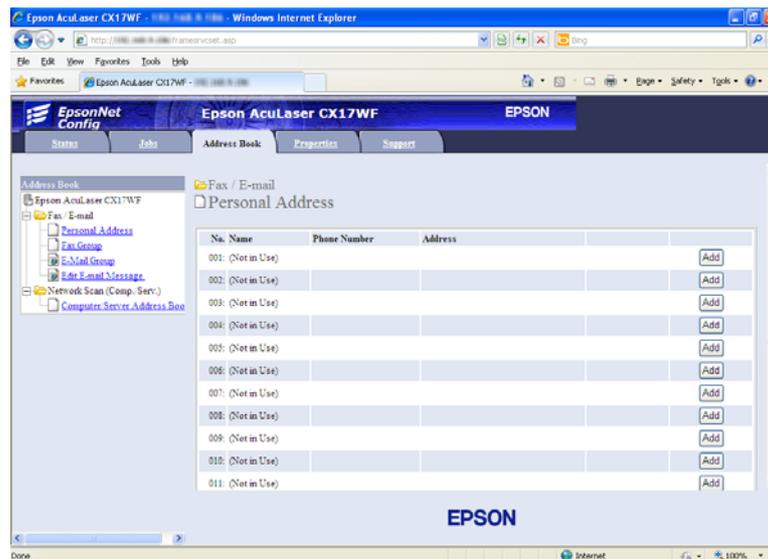
5. Select any unused number and click **Add**.
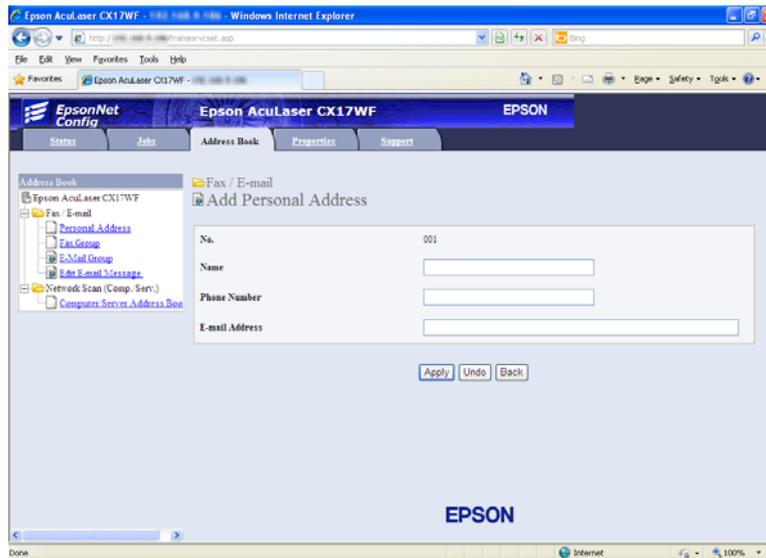
The **Add Personal Address** page appears.

6. Enter a name, phone number and e-mail address in the **Name**, **Phone Number** and **E-mail Address** fields.

7. Click the **Apply** button.

Sending an E-mail With the Scanned File

Note:
To use the Scan to E-mail function, you first need to set up your SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol) server information. SMTP is a protocol for sending e-mail. For details, refer to the Setup Guide.

1. Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass.

    See Also:
    ❏ *"Making Copies From the ADF (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)" on page 159*

    ❏ *"Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 157*

2. Press the ◇ (**Scan**) button.

3. Select Scan to E-Mail, and then press the (ok) button.

4. Select E-Mail to, and then press the (ok) button.

5. Select the setting listed below, and then press the (ok) button.

    Keypad: Enter the e-mail address directly and then press the (ok) button.

    Address Book: Select the e-mail address registered in the E-mail Address Book, and then press the (ok) button.

    E-Mail Group: Select the e-mail group registered in the E-mail Groups, and then press the (ok) button.

    Search Address Book: Enter a text to search from the E-mail Address Book, and then press the (ok) button. Select the e-mail address from the list, and then press the (ok) button.

    Note:
    Users need to be registered before you can select Address Book *on the operator panel.*

6. Select scanning options as required.

7. Press the ◇ (**Start**) button to send e-mail.

Adjusting Scanning Options

Adjusting the Default Scan Settings

For a complete list of all of the defaults settings, see "Defaults Settings" on page 280.

Setting the Scanned Image File Type

To specify the file type of the scanned image:

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Defaults Settings, and then press the (ok) button.

3. Select Scan Defaults, and then press the (ok) button.

4.   Select File Format, and then press the (ok) button.

5.   Select the type, and then press the (ok) button.

Available types:

❏   PDF (factory default)

❏   TIFF

❏   JPEG

Setting the Color Mode

You can scan an image in color or in black and white. Selecting black and white significantly reduces the file size of the scanned images. An image scanned in color will have a larger file size than the same image scanned in black and white.

1.   Press the **System** button.

2.   Select Defaults Settings, and then press the (ok) button.

3.   Select Scan Defaults, and then press the (ok) button.

4.   Select Color, and then press the (ok) button.

5.   Select one of the following options, and then press the (ok) button.

❏   Black & White: Scans in black and white mode. This is available only when File Format is set to PDF or TIFF.

❏   Color: Scans in color mode. (factory default)

Setting the Scan Resolution

You may want to change the scan resolution depending on the way you plan to use the scanned image. Scan resolution affects both the size and image quality of the scanned image file. The higher the scan resolution, the larger the file size.

To select the scan resolution:

1.   Press the **System** button.

2.   Select Defaults Settings, and then press the (ok) button.

3. Select Scan Defaults, and then press the (ok) button.

4. Select Resolution, and then press the (ok) button.

5. Select one of the following options, and then press the (ok) button:

   ❏ 200 × 200dpi: Produces the lowest resolution and smallest file size. (factory default)

   ❏ 300 × 300dpi: Produces medium resolution and a medium file size.

   ❏ 400 × 400dpi: Produces high resolution and a large file size.

   ❏ 600 × 600dpi: Produces the highest resolution and largest file size.

Setting the Original Size

To specify the size of the original:

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Defaults Settings, and then press the (ok) button.

3. Select Scan Defaults, and then press the (ok) button.

4. Select Document Size, and then press the (ok) button.

5. Select a specific paper size to determine the area to be scanned, and then press the (ok) button.

   The factory default setting is A4 (210 × 297mm).

Automatically Suppressing Background Variations

When scanning documents with a dark background such as newspapers, the printer automatically can detect the background and whiten it when outputting the image.

To turn on/off automatic suppression:

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Defaults Settings, and then press the (ok) button.

3. Select Scan Defaults, and then press the (ok) button.

4. Select Auto Exposure, and then press the (ok) button.

5.   Select either On or Off, and then press the (ok) button.

The factory default setting is On.

Changing the Scan Settings for an Individual Job

Scanning to a Computer

To temporarily change a scan setting when scanning to a computer:

1.   Press the ◇ (**Scan**) button.

2.   For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF, select the scan destination, and then press the (ok) button.

For the Epson AcuLaser CX17, select Scan to Computer(USB), and then press the (ok) button.

3.   Select the desired menu item, and then press the (ok) button.

4.   Select the desired setting or enter the value using the numeric keypad, and then press the (ok) button.

5.   Repeat steps 3 and 4, as needed.

6.   Press the ◇ (**Start**) button to begin the scan.

Emailing the Scanned Image (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF only)

To temporarily change a scan setting when emailing the scanned image:

1.   Press the ◇ (**Scan**) button.

2.   Select Scan to E-Mail, and then press the (ok) button.

3.   Select the e-mail destination, and then press the (ok) button.

4.   Select the desired menu item, and then press the (ok) button.

5.   Select the desired setting or enter the value using the numeric keypad, and then press the (ok) button.

6. Repeat steps 4and 5, as needed.

7. Press the ◇ (**Start**) button to begin the scan.

Chapter 8

Faxing (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)

Connecting the Telephone Line

Note:
Do not connect your printer directly to a DSL (digital subscriber line). This may damage the printer. To use a DSL, you will need to use an appropriate DSL filter. Contact your service provider for the DSL filter.

1. Plug one end of a telephone line cord to the wall jack connector and the other end to an active wall jack.
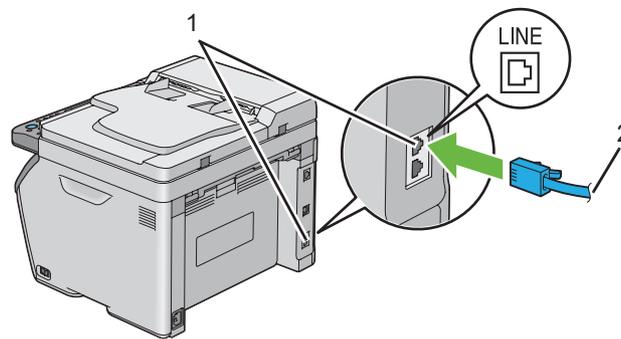
1	Wall jack connector
2	To the wall jack

Note:
Use the telephone line cord which has four contacts. The cord included with your printer has four contacts. It is recommended that you plug the cord to the wall jack which also has four contacts.

2. To connect a telephone and/or answering machine to your printer, plug the telephone or answering machine line cord into the phone connector ($\overset{\text{PHONE}}{\mathbb{C}}$).
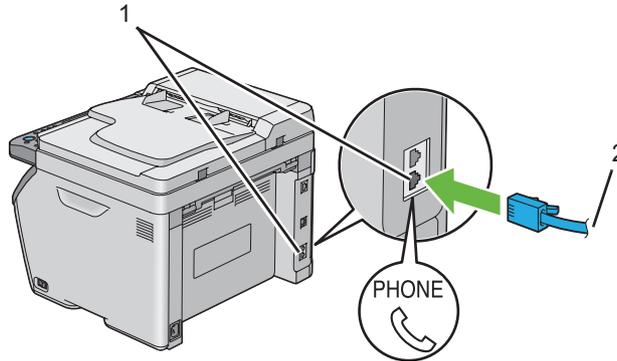
| 1 | Phone connector |
| 2 | To an external telephone or answering machine |

Configuring Fax Initial Settings

Setting Your Region

You need to set the region where your printer is used for using the fax service on the printer.

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Admin Menu, and then press the ⓞⓚ button.

3. Select Fax Settings, and then press the ⓞⓚ button.

4. Select Region, and then press the ⓞⓚ button.

5. Select the region where the printer is used, and then press the ⓞⓚ button.

6. Ensure that Restart System is displayed, select Yes, and then press the ⓞⓚ button.

   The printer restarts automatically to apply the settings.

Note:
When you configure the region setting, the information, which is registered to the device, is initialized.

Setting the Printer ID

You may be required to indicate your fax number on any fax you send. The printer ID, containing your telephone number and name or company name, will be printed at the top of each page sent from your printer.

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Admin Menu, and then press the (ok) button.

3. Select Fax Settings, and then press the (ok) button.

4. Select Phone Number, and then press the (ok) button.

5. Enter your fax number using the numeric keypad.

    Note:
    *If you make a mistake while entering numbers, press the **C** (**Clear**) button to delete the last digit.*

6. Press the (ok) button when the number on the LCD panel is correct.

7. Select Company Name, and then press the (ok) button.

8. Enter your name or company name using the numeric keypad.

    You can enter alphanumeric characters using the numeric keypad, including special symbols by pressing the 1, *, and # buttons.

    For details on how to use the numeric keypad to enter alphanumeric characters, see "Using the Numeric Keypad" on page 299.

9. Press the (ok) button when the name on the LCD panel is correct.

10. To return to the previous screen, press the ⤺ (**Back**) button.

Setting the Time and Date

Note:
It may be necessary to reset the correct time and date if loss of power to the printer occurs.

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Admin Menu, and then press the (OK) button.

3. Select System Settings, and then press the (OK) button.

4. Select Clock Settings, and then press the (OK) button.

5. Select Set Date, and then press the (OK) button.

6. Enter the correct date using the numeric keypad, or select the correct date.

   Note:
   If you make a mistake while entering numbers, press the ◄ button to re-enter the digit.

7. Press the (OK) button when the date on the LCD panel is correct.

8. Select Set Time, and then press the (OK) button.

9. Enter the correct time using the numeric keypad, or select the correct time.

10. Press the (OK) button when the time on the LCD panel is correct.

11. To return to the previous screen, press the (Back) button.

Changing the Clock Mode

You can set the current time using either the 12-hour or the 24-hour format.

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Admin Menu, and then press the (OK) button.

3. Select System Settings, and then press the (OK) button.

4. Select Clock Settings, and then press the (OK) button.

5. Select `Time Format`, and then press the (OK) button.

6. Select the desired format, and then press the (OK) button.

7. To return to the previous screen, press the ⤺ (**Back**) button.

Sending a Fax

You can fax data from your printer.

Loading an Original Document on the ADF

Important:
Do not load more than 15 sheets into the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) or allow more than 15 sheets to be fed to the document output tray. The document output tray should be emptied before it exceeds 15 sheets or your original documents may be damaged.

Note:
❏ *To get the best scan quality, especially for gray scale images, use the document glass instead of the ADF.*

❏ *You cannot load the following documents in the ADF. Be sure to place them on the document glass.*

	Curled originals		Pre-punched paper
	Lightweight originals		Folded, creased or torn originals
	Cut and paste originals		Carbon paper

1. Place the document(s) face up on the ADF with the top edge of the documents in first. Then adjust the document guides to the correct document size.

2. Adjust the document resolution, referring to "Resolution" on page 220.

Loading an Original Document on the Document Glass
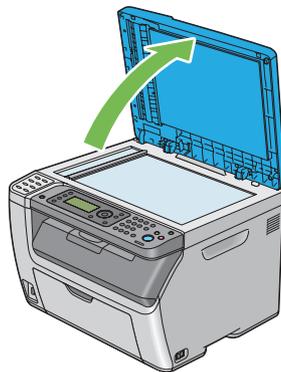
1. Open the document cover.

2. Place the document face down on the document glass and align it with the registration guide on the top left corner of the document glass.

Caution:
Do not apply excessive force to hold thick document on the document glass. It may break the glass and cause injuries.
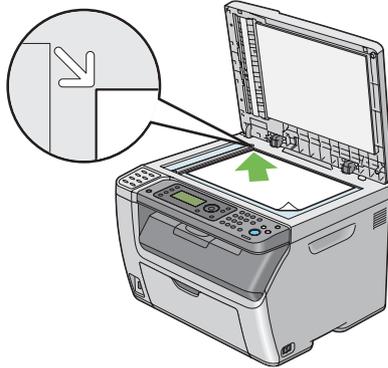
3. Adjust the document resolution, referring to "Resolution" on page 220.

4. Close the document cover.

Note:
❏ *Ensure that no document is in the ADF. If any document is detected in the ADF, it takes priority over the document on the document glass.*

❏ *If you are faxing a page from a book or magazine, lift the document cover until its hinges are caught by the stopper and then close the document cover. If the book or magazine is thicker than 20 mm, start faxing with the document cover open.*

Resolution

To specify the resolution level to be used for fax transmission:

1. Press the ◈ (**Fax**) button.

2. Select Resolution, and then press the (OK) button.

3. Select the desired menu item, and then press the (OK) button.

Note:
❏ *Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.*

Standard *	Suitable for documents with normal sized characters.

Fine	Suitable for documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
Super Fine	Suitable for documents containing extremely fine detail. The `Super Fine` mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the super fine resolution.
Ultra Fine	Suitable for documents containing photographic images.

❏ *Faxes scanned in the `Super Fine` mode transmit at the highest resolution supported by the receiving device.*

Document Type

To select the default document type for the current fax job:

1. Press the ✦ (**Fax**) button.

2. Select `Document Type`, and then press the ⓘⓚ button.

3. Select the desired setting, and then press the ⓘⓚ button.

   Note:
   Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Text *	Suitable for documents with text.
Photo	Suitable for documents with photos.

Lighten/Darken

To adjust the contrast to make the fax lighter or darker than the original:

1. Press the ✦ (**Fax**) button.

2. Select `Lighten/Darken`, and then press the ⓘⓚ button.

3. Select the desired setting, and then press the ⓘⓚ button.

   Note:
   Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Lighten2	Makes the fax lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
Lighten1	
Normal *	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Darken1	Makes the fax darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darken2	

Inserting a Pause

For some telephone systems, it is necessary to dial an access code and listen for a second dial tone. A pause must be entered in order for the access code to function. For example, enter the access code 9 and then press the **Redial/Pause** button before entering the telephone number. "-" appears on the LCD panel to indicate when a pause is entered.

Sending a Fax Automatically

1. Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass and close the document cover.

    See Also:
    ❏ *"Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 218*

    ❏ *"Loading an Original Document on the Document Glass" on page 219*

2. Press the ◈ (**Fax**) button.

3. Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs.

    See Also:
    ❏ *"Resolution" on page 220*

    ❏ *"Lighten/Darken" on page 221*

4. You can select a fax number in one of the following ways:

    ❏ Select Fax to, and then press the ⊛ button. Select Keypad, and then press the ⊛ button. Enter the fax number of the remote fax machine using the numeric keypad, and then press the ⊛ button.

❏ Press the One-touch button, and then press the (OK) button.

❏ Press the **Address Book** button, select All Entries, Group Dial, or Search using the ▼ button, and then press the (OK) button.

All Entries	Displays a list of registered fax numbers. Press the ▶ button to select the recipients, and then press the (OK) button.
Group Dial	Press the ▶ button to select the recipients, and then press the (OK) button.
Search	Searches a fax number from the Address Book. Enter the text you want to search, and then press the (OK) button. Press the ▶ button to select the recipients, and then press the (OK) button.

❏ Press the **Redial/Pause** button to redial, and then press the (OK) button.

❏ Press the **Speed Dial** button. Enter the speed dial number between 01 and 99 using the numeric keypad, and then press the (OK) button.

Note:
Before you use the One-touch button, you need to register a number for any speed dial from 01 to 08. For more information on how to store the number, see "Storing a Number for Speed Dialing" on page 235.

5. Press the ◈ (**Start**) button.

When you are using the document glass, the display prompts you for another page. Select Yes or No, and then press the (OK) button.

If you select Yes, place the next page on the document glass, select Continue and then press the (OK) button.

6. The number is dialed and then the printer begins sending the fax when the remote fax machine is ready.

Note:
*Press the ⊘ (**Stop**) button to cancel the fax job at any time while sending the fax.*

Sending a Fax Manually

1. Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass and close the document cover.

See Also:

❏ *"Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 218*

❏ *"Loading an Original Document on the Document Glass" on page 219*

2. Press the ❧ (**Fax**) button.

3. Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs.

    See Also:
    ❏ *"Resolution" on page 220*

    ❏ *"Lighten/Darken" on page 221*

4. Select OnHook, and then press the ⓞⓚ button.

5. Select On, and then press the ⓞⓚ button.

6. Enter the fax number of the remote fax machine using the numeric keypad.

    ❏ If the document is loaded on the ADF, press the ◈ (**Start**) button.

    ❏ If the document is not loaded on the ADF, press the ◈ (**Start**) button, select the desired setting, and then press the ⓞⓚ button.

Note:
*Press the ⊘ (**Stop**) button to cancel the fax job at any time while sending the fax.*

Confirming Transmissions

When the last page of your document has been sent successfully, the printer beeps and returns to the standby mode.

If something goes wrong while sending your fax, an error message appears on the LCD panel.

If you receive an error message, press the ⓞⓚ button to clear the message and try to send the document again.

You can set your printer to print a confirmation report automatically after each fax transmission.

See Also:
❏ *"Fax Transmit" on page 265*

❏ *"Fax Broadcast" on page 266*

Automatic Redialing

If the number you have dialed is busy or there is no answer when you send a fax, the printer will automatically redial the number every minute based on the number set in the redial settings.

To change the time interval between redials and the number of redial attempts, see "Redial Delay" on page 260 and "Number of Redial" on page 260.

Note:
The printer will not automatically redial a number that was busy when the number was manually entered.

Sending a Delayed Fax

The Delayed Start mode can be used to save scanned documents for transmission at a specified time to take advantage of lower long distance rates.

1. Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass and close the document cover.

   See Also:
   ❏ *"Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 218*

   ❏ *"Loading an Original Document on the Document Glass" on page 219*

2. Press the ☙ (**Fax**) button.

3. Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs.

   See Also:
   ❏ *"Resolution" on page 220*

   ❏ *"Lighten/Darken" on page 221*

4. Select Delayed Start, and then press the ⊙ⱪ button.

5. Select On, and then press the ⊙ⱪ button.

6. Enter the start time using the numeric keypad or press the ▲ or ▼ button to select the start time, and then press the (ok) button.

7. Select Fax to, and then press the (ok) button.

8. Select Keypad, and then press the (ok) button.

9. Enter the number of the remote machine using the numeric keypad, and then press the (ok) button.

    You can also use speed dial or group dial numbers.

    See Also:
    "Automatic Dialing" on page 234

10. Press the ◇ (**Start**) button.

Once the Delayed Start mode is activated, your printer stores all the documents to be faxed to its memory and sends them at the specified time. After faxing in the Delayed Start mode is complete, the data in the memory is cleared.

Sending a Fax from the Driver (Direct Fax)

You can send a fax directly from the computer running a Microsoft® Windows® operating system or Mac OS® X by using the driver.

Note:
Only black and white faxes can be sent using Direct Fax.

For Windows

Note:
❏ *The following procedure uses Windows XP WordPad as an example. The names of the windows and the buttons may be different from those given in the following procedure depending on the OS and application you are using.*

❏ *To use this feature, you must install the fax driver.*

See Also:
"Installing Print Driver on Computers Running Windows" on page 53

1. Open the file you want to send by fax.

2. Open the print dialog box from the application, and then select your fax driver.

3. Click **Preferences**.
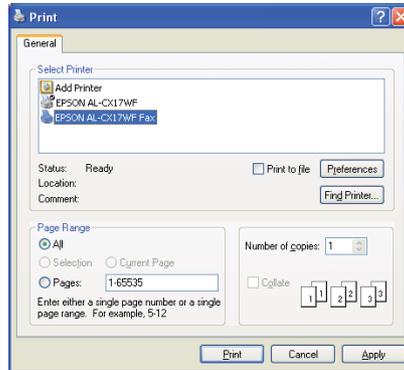
4. Specify the fax settings. For more information, click **Help** of the driver.

   Note:
   The settings done here are only applied to a single fax job.
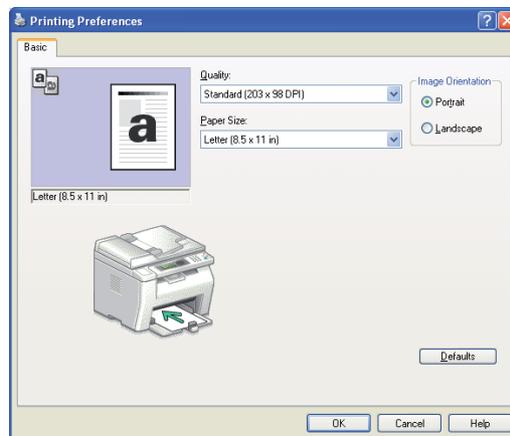
5. Click **OK** to close the **Printing Preferences** dialog box.

6. Click **Print**.

   The **Set / Check Fax Transmission** dialog box appears.

7. Specify the destination for the recipient in one of the following ways:

❏ Enter a name and phone number directly.

❏ Select a recipient from the Phone Book (PC Fax Address Book) saved on your computer or Address Book (Device Address Book).

❏ Select a recipient from a database other than the Phone Book (PC Fax Address Book) or Address Book (Device Address Book).

For more information on how to specify the destination, click **Help** to see the Help of the fax driver.
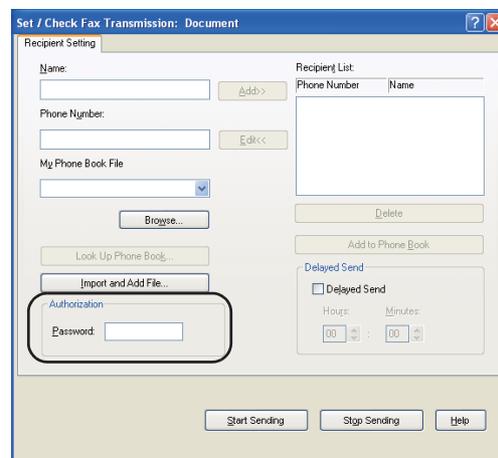
Note:
*Enter the password in the **Password** field in the **Authorization** area before sending a fax if the Fax service is locked with a password.*

8. Click **Start Sending**.

For Mac OS X

Note:
❏ *The following procedure uses Mac OS X 10.6 TextEdit as an example. The names of the windows and the buttons may be different from those given in the following procedure depending on the OS and application you are using.*

❏ *When using a USB connection on Mac OS X 10.4.11, upgrade Common Unix Printing System (CUPS) software to version 1.2.12 or later. You can download it from CUPS web site.*

❏ *To use this feature, you must install the fax driver.*

See Also:
"Installing Print Driver on Computers Running Mac OS X" on page 103

1. Open the file you want to send by fax.

2. Open the print dialog box from the application, and then select your fax driver.
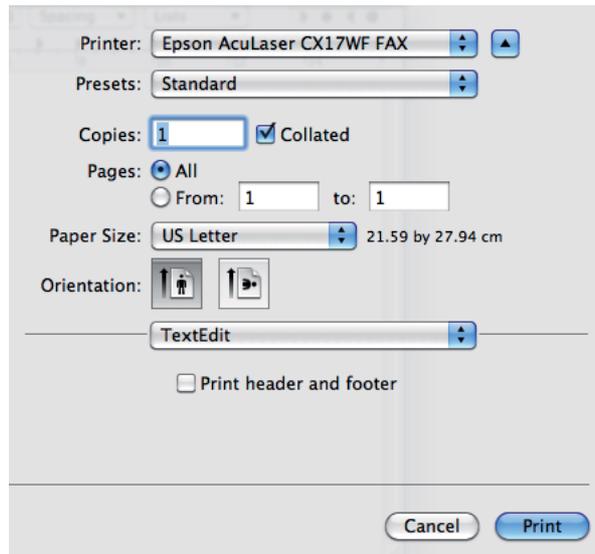
3. Specify the fax settings.

    Note:
    The settings done here are only applied to a single fax job.

4. Click **Print**.

    The **Fax Recipient** dialog box appears.

5. Specify the destination for the recipient in one of the following ways:

    ❏ Specify a recipient directly.

        a Enter a name and phone number directly.

        b Click **Add to Recipient List**.

        OR

❏   Select a recipient from the Phone Book saved on your computer.

　a   Click **Look Up Phone Book**.

　　The **Phone Book** dialog box appears.

　b   Select a recipient and then click **Add to Recipient List**.

　c   Click **Close**.

Note:
*Enter the password in the **Password** field in the **Authorization** area before sending a fax if the Fax service is locked with a password.*

6.   Click **OK**.

Receiving a Fax

About Receiving Modes

There are five receiving modes; `FAX Mode`, `TEL Mode`, `TEL/FAX Mode`, `Ans/FAX Mode`, and `DRPD Mode`.

Note:
❏ *To use* `TEL/FAX Mode` *or* `Ans/FAX Mode`, *attach an external telephone or answering machine to the phone connector (📞) on the back of your printer.*

❏ *When the memory is full, you cannot receive a fax. Delete any documents you no longer need from the memory.*

See Also:
❏ *"Receiving a Fax Automatically in the FAX Mode" on page 231*

❏ *"Receiving a Fax Manually in the TEL Mode " on page 232*

❏ *"Receiving a Fax Automatically in the TEL/FAX Mode or Ans/FAX Mode" on page 232*

❏ *"Using an Answering Machine" on page 241*

❏ *"Receiving Faxes Using the DRPD Mode" on page 233*

Loading Paper for Receiving Faxes

The instructions for loading paper in the priority sheet inserter (PSI) or multipurpose feeder (MPF) are the same whether you are printing, faxing, or copying, except that faxes can only be printed on Letter-, A4-, or Legal-sized paper.

See Also:
❏ *"Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 119*

❏ *"Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 127*

❏ *"Setting Paper Sizes and Types" on page 136*

Receiving a Fax Automatically in the FAX Mode

Your printer is preset to `FAX Mode` at the factory.

If you receive a fax, the printer automatically goes into the fax receive mode after a specified period of time and receives the fax.

To change the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call, see "Auto Answer Fax" on page 258.

Receiving a Fax Manually in the TEL Mode

You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone, and then pressing the ◇ (**Start**) button.

The printer begins receiving a fax and returns to the standby mode when the reception is completed.

Receiving a Fax Automatically in the TEL/FAX Mode or Ans/FAX Mode

To use TEL/FAX Mode or Ans/FAX Mode, you must attach an external telephone to the phone connector (📞) on the back of your printer.

In the TEL/FAX Mode, if the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in Auto Ans. TEL/FAX, and then the printer automatically receives a fax.

In the Ans/FAX Mode, if the caller leaves a message, the answering machine stores the message as it would normally. If your printer hears a fax tone on the line, it automatically starts to receive a fax.

Note:
If you have set Auto Answer Fax and your answering machine is turned off, or no answering machine is connected to your printer, your printer will automatically go into the fax receive mode after a predefined time.

See Also:
"Using an Answering Machine" on page 241

Receiving a Fax Manually Using an External Telephone

This feature works best when you are using an external telephone connected to the phone connector (📞) on the back of your printer. You can receive a fax from someone you are talking to on the external telephone without having to go to the printer.

When you receive a call on the external telephone and hear fax tones, press the two-digit keys on the external telephone, or set OnHook to Off and then press the ◇ (**Start**) button.

The printer receives the document.

Press the buttons slowly in sequence. If you still hear the fax tone from the remote machine, try pressing the two-digit keys once again.

Remote Receive is set to Off at the factory. You can change the two-digit number to whatever you choose. For details on changing the code, see "Remote Rcv Tone" on page 261.

Note:
Set the dialing system of your external telephone to DTMF.

Receiving Faxes Using the DRPD Mode

The Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) is a telephone company service which enables a user to use a single telephone line to answer several different telephone numbers. The particular number someone uses to call you on is identified by different ringing patterns, which consist of various combinations of long and short ringing sounds.

Before using the DRPD option, Distinctive Ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. To set up DRPD, you will need another telephone line at your location, or someone available to dial your fax number from outside.

To set up the DRPD:

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Admin Menu, and then press the (OK) button.

3. Select Fax Settings, and then press the (OK) button.

4. Select DRPD Pattern, and then press the (OK) button.

5. Select the desired menu item, and then press the (OK) button.

6. Reboot the printer by turning the power switch off and then on.

To receive faxes in the DRPD, you need to set the menu to DRPD Mode. For more details, see "Ans Select" on page 258.

Your printer provides seven DRPD patterns. If this service is available from your telephone company, ask your telephone company which pattern you need to select to use this service.

See Also:
"DRPD Pattern" on page 262

Receiving Faxes in the Memory

Since your printer is a multi-tasking device, it can receive faxes while you are making copies or printing. If you receive a fax while you are copying, printing, or run out of paper or toner, your printer stores incoming faxes in the memory. Then, as soon as you finish copying, printing, or re-supply the toner cartridges, the printer automatically prints the fax.

Polling Receive

You can receive faxes from the remote fax machine when you want to receive it.

1. Press the ☙ (**Fax**) button.

2. Select Polling Receive, and then press the ⊙ʀ button.

3. Select On, and then press the ⊙ʀ button.

4. Enter the fax number of the remote machine, and then press the ⊙ʀ button.

   Note:
   For information on how to enter the fax number of the remote machine, see "Sending a Fax Automatically" on page 222.

5. Press the ◈ (**Start**) button.

Automatic Dialing

Speed Dialing

You can store up to 99 frequently dialed numbers in speed dial locations (01– 99).

When the speed dial job specified in the delayed fax or redial exists, you cannot change the speed dial number from the operator panel or EpsonNet Config.

Storing a Number for Speed Dialing

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Admin Menu, and then press the (ok) button.

3. Select Phone Book, and then press the (ok) button.

4. Select Speed Dial, and then press the (ok) button.

5. Select the desired speed dial number between 01 and 99, and then press the (ok) button.

6. Select Name, and then press the (ok) button.

7. Enter the name, and then press the (ok) button.

8. Select Phone Number, and then press the (ok) button.

9. Enter the number you want to store using the numeric keypad, and then press the (ok) button.

    To insert a pause between numbers, press the **Redial/Pause** button. "-" appears on the LCD panel.

10. Select Apply Settings, and then press the (ok) button.

11. Ensure that Are You Sure? is displayed, select Yes, and then press the (ok) button.

12. To store more fax numbers, repeat steps 5 to 11.

13. To return to the previous screen, press the   ͻ (**Back**) button.

Sending a Fax Using a Speed Dial

1. Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass and close the document cover.

See Also:
❏ *"Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 218*

❏ *"Loading an Original Document on the Document Glass" on page 219*

2. To enter the speed dial number, do either of the following after pressing the ◈ (**Fax**) button:

    ❏ Select Fax to, and then press the (ok) button. Select Speed Dial, and then press the (ok) button.

    ❏ Press the **Speed Dial** button.

3. Enter the speed dial number between 01 and 99 using the numeric keypad.

    The corresponding entry's name briefly appears on the LCD panel.

4. Press the (ok) button.

5. Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs.

    See Also:
    ❏ *"Resolution" on page 220*

    ❏ *"Lighten/Darken" on page 221*

6. Press the ◈ (**Start**) button.

7. The document scans to the memory.

    When you are using the document glass, the display prompts you for another page. Select Yes to add more documents or to select No to begin sending the fax immediately, and then press the (ok) button.

8. The fax number stored in the speed dial location is automatically dialed. The document is sent when the remote fax machine answers.

Note:
Using the asterisk (*) in the first digit, you can send a document to multiple locations. For example, if you enter 0*, you can send a document to the locations registered between 01 and 09.

Group Dialing

If you frequently send the same document to several destinations, you can create a group of these destinations. You can create up to six groups. This enables you to use a group dial number setting to send the same document to all the destinations in the group.

Note:
You cannot include one group dial number within another group dial number.

Setting Group Dial

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Admin Menu, and then press the (ok) button.

3. Select Phone Book, and then press the (ok) button.

4. Select Group Dial, and then press the (ok) button.

5. Select the desired group dial number between 01 and 06, and then press the (ok) button.

6. Select Name, and then press the (ok) button.

7. Enter the name, and then press the (ok) button.

8. Select Speed Dial No, and then press the (ok) button.

9. Select the speed dial numbers, and then press the (ok) button.

10. Select Apply Settings, and then press the (ok) button.

11. Ensure that Are You Sure? is displayed, select Yes, and then press the (ok) button.

12. To store more group dial numbers, repeat steps 5 to 11.

13. To return to the previous screen, press the ⤺ (**Back**) button.

Editing Group Dial

You can delete a specific speed dial number from a selected group or add a new number to the selected group.

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Admin Menu, and then press the (OK) button.

3. Select Phone Book, and then press the (OK) button.

4. Select Group Dial, and then press the (OK) button.

5. Select the group dial number that you want to edit, and then press the (OK) button.

6. To change the group dial name:

   a Select Name, and then press the (OK) button.

   b Enter a new name, and then press the (OK) button.

   c Select Apply Settings, and then press the (OK) button.

   d Ensure that Are You Sure? is displayed, select Yes, and then press the (OK) button.

7. To change the speed dial number:

   a Select Speed Dial No, and then press the (OK) button.

   b Select or deselect the desired speed dial number. Press the (OK) button.

   c Select Apply Settings, and then press the (OK) button.

   d Ensure that Are You Sure? is displayed, select Yes, and then press the (OK) button.

   Note:
   When you delete the last speed dial in a group, the group itself is not deleted.

8. To delete the group dial:

   a Press the **C** (**Clear**) button.

b   Ensure that Are You Sure? is displayed, select Yes, and then press the (OK) button.

9.   If you want to edit another group dial number or enter a new group dial number, repeat steps 5 to 8.

10. To return to the previous screen, press the ⤺ (**Back**) button.

Sending a Fax Using Group Dialing (Multi-address Transmission)

You can use group dialing for broadcasting or delayed transmissions.

Follow the procedure of the desired operation (For delayed transmission, see "Sending a Delayed Fax" on page 225).

You can use one or more group numbers in one operation. Then continue the procedure to complete the desired operation.

Your printer automatically scans the document loaded in the ADF or on the document glass into the memory. The printer dials each of the numbers included in the group.

Printing an Address Book List

You can check your automatic dial setting by printing an Address Book List.

Note:
The list is printed in English.

1.   Press the **System** button.

2.   Select Report / List, and then press the (OK) button.

3.   Select Address Book, and then press the (OK) button.

A list of your speed dial and group dial entries is printed.

Other Ways to Fax

Using the Secure Receiving Mode

You may need to prevent your received faxes from being accessed by unauthorized people. You can turn on the secure receiving mode using the Secure Receive option to restrict printing out all of the received faxes when the printer is unattended. In the secure receiving mode, all incoming faxes will get saved in the memory. When the mode turns off, any faxes stored will be printed.

Note:
Before operation, ensure that Panel Lock Set *is set to* Enable.

To turn the secure receiving mode on:

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Admin Menu, and then press the (ok) button.

3. Enter the password specified for Panel Lock, and then press the (ok) button.

4. Select Secure Settings, and then press the (ok) button.

5. Select Secure Receive, and then press the (ok) button.

6. Select Secure Receive Set, and then press the (ok) button.

7. Select Enable, and then press the (ok) button.

    Note:
    The factory-default password is 0000.

8. To return to the standby mode, press the **System** button.

    When a fax is received in the secure receiving mode, your printer stores it into memory and the Job Status screen displays Secure Receive to let you know that there is a fax stored.

    Note:
    If you change the password while Secure Receive Set *is set to* Enable, *perform steps 1 to 5. Select* Change Password, *and then press the* (ok) *button. Enter the new password, and then press the* (ok) *button.*

To print received documents:

1. Press the **Job Status** button.

2. Select `Secure Receive`, and then press the (ok) button.

3. Enter the password, and then press the (ok) button.

   The faxes stored in memory are printed.

To turn the secure receiving mode off:

1. Access the `Secure Receive Set` menu by following steps 1 to 6 in "To turn the secure receiving mode on:".

2. Select `Disable`, and then press the (ok) button.

3. To return to the previous screen, press the 🔙 (**Back**) button.

Using an Answering Machine
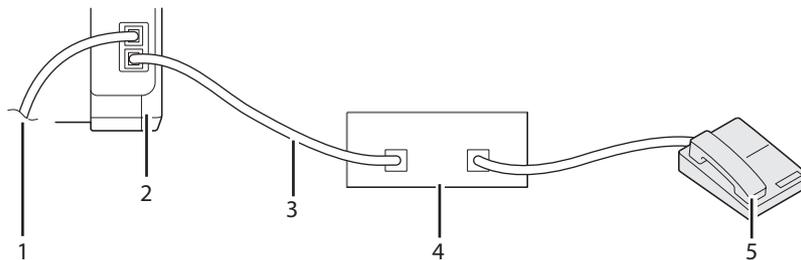
1	To the wall jack
2	Printer
3	Line
4	Telephone Answering Device
5	Phone

You can connect a telephone answering device (TAD) directly to the back of your printer as shown above.

❏ Set your printer to `Ans/FAX Mode` and set `Auto Ans. Ans/FAX` to specify the time for the TAD to respond.

❏ When the TAD picks up the call, the printer monitors and takes the line if fax tones are received and then starts receiving the fax.

❏ If the answering device is off, the printer automatically goes into the fax receive mode after the ring tone sounds for a predefined time.

❏ If you answer the call and hear fax tones, the printer will answer the fax call if you

  ❏ Set `OnHook` to `On` (you can hear voice or fax tones from the remote machine), and then press the ◇ (**Start**) button and hang up the receiver.

  ❏ Press the two-digit remote receive code and hang up the receiver.

Using a Computer Modem
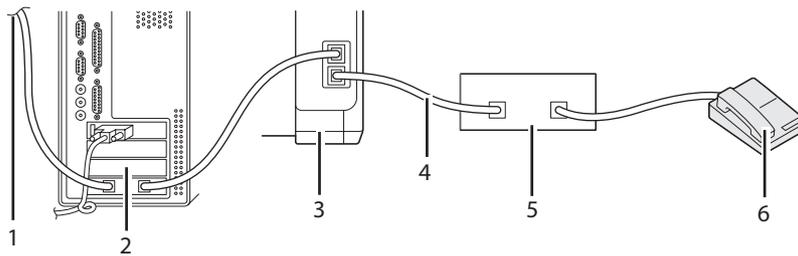
1	To the internet
2	Computer
3	Printer
4	Line
5	Telephone Answering Device
6	Phone

If you want to use your computer modem for faxing or for a dial-up internet connection, connect the computer modem directly to the back of your printer with the TAD as shown above.

❏ Set your printer to `Ans/FAX Mode` and set `Auto Ans. Ans/FAX` to specify the time for the TAD to respond.

❏ Turn off the computer modem's fax-receive feature.

❏ Do not use the computer modem if your printer is sending or receiving a fax.

❏ Follow the instructions provided with your computer modem and fax application to fax via the computer modem.

Setting Sounds

Speaker Volume

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Admin Menu, and then press the (OK) button.

3. Select Fax Settings, and then press the (OK) button.

4. Select Line Monitor, and then press the (OK) button.

5. Select the desired volume, and then press the (OK) button.

6. Reboot the printer by turning the power switch off and then on.

Ringer Volume

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Admin Menu, and then press the (OK) button.

3. Select Fax Settings, and then press the (OK) button.

4. Select Ring Tone Volume, and then press the (OK) button.

5. Select the desired volume, and then press the (OK) button.

6. Reboot the printer by turning the power switch off and then on.

Specifying the Fax Settings

Changing the Fax Settings Options

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Admin Menu, and then press the (OK) button.

3. Select Fax Settings, and then press the (OK) button.

4. Select the desired menu item, and then press the (OK) button.

5. Select the desired setting or enter the value using the numeric keypad.

6. Press the (OK) button to save the selection.

7. If necessary, repeat steps 4 to 6.

8. To return to the previous screen, press the ⤺ (**Back**) button.

For details on available menu items, see "Available Fax Setting Options" on page 244.

Available Fax Setting Options

You can use the following setting options for configuring the fax system:

Option		Description
Ans Select	TEL Mode	Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone, pressing the remote receive code, and then pressing the ◇ (**Start**) button.
	FAX Mode *	Automatically receives faxes.
	TEL/FAX Mode	When the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in `Auto Ans. TEL/FAX`, and then the printer automatically receives a fax. If an incoming call is not a fax, the printer beeps from the internal speaker indicating that the call is a telephone call.
	Ans/FAX Mode	The printer can share a telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the phone communication is using serial transmission in your region, this mode is not supported.
	DRPD Mode	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, a distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.
Auto Answer Fax		Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call.
Auto Ans. TEL/FAX		Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call.
Auto Ans. Ans/FAX		Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call.
Line Monitor		Sets the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.
Ring Tone Volume		Sets the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when `Ans Select` is set to `TEL/FAX Mode`.
Line Type		Sets the line type.
Dialing Type		Sets the dialing type. **Note:** This menu is not displayed when `Region` is set to `South Africa`.
Interval Timer		Specifies the interval between transmission attempts.
Number of Redial		Specifies the number of redial attempts to make when the destination fax number is busy. If you enter 0, the printer will not redial.
Redial Delay		Specifies the interval between redial attempts.

Option	Description
Junk Fax Filter	Sets whether to reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers by accepting faxes only from the fax numbers registered in the Address Book.
Remote Receive	Sets whether to receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
Remote Rcv Tone	Specifies the remote receive code in two digits to start Remote Receive.
Send Header	Sets whether to print the information of sender on the header of faxes.
Company Name	Sets the name of sender to be printed on the header of faxes. Up to 30 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
Phone Number	Sets the fax number of the printer to be printed on the header of faxes.
Fax Cover Page	Sets whether to attach a cover page to faxes.
DRPD Pattern	Sets the DRPD setting from `Pattern1` to `Pattern7`. DRPD is a service provided by some telephone companies.
Prefix Dial	Specifies whether to set a prefix dial number.
Prefix Dial Num	Sets a prefix dial number of up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX).
Discard Size	Sets whether to discard text or images at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit onto the output paper. Selecting `Auto Reduction` automatically reduces the fax page to fit it onto the output paper, and does not discard any images or text at the bottom of the page.
ECM	Sets whether to enable the ECM. To use the ECM, the remote machines must also support the ECM.
Extel Hook Thresh	You can select the external telephone hook detection threshold for the condition in which a telephone line is not being used.
Modem Speed	Specifies the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.
Fax Activity	Sets whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
Fax Transmit	Sets whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.
Fax Broadcast	Sets whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission to multiple destinations or only when an error occurs.
Region	Sets the region where the printer is used.

Prefix Dial

Note:
Prefix Dial *only supports the environment where you send a fax to the external line number. To use* Prefix Dial, *you must do the following from the operator panel.*

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Admin Menu, and then press the (ok) button.

3. Select Fax Settings, and then press the (ok) button.

4. Select Line Type, and then press the (ok) button.

5. Select PBX, and then press the (ok) button.

6. Press the ↰ (**Back**) button to return to the previous menu.

7. Select Prefix Dial, and then press the (ok) button.

8. Select On, and then press the (ok) button.

9. Press the ↰ (**Back**) button to return to the previous menu.

10. Select Prefix Dial Num, and then press the (ok) button.

11. Enter an up-to-five-digit prefix number from 0–9, *, and #.

12. Press the (ok) button when the prefix dial number on the LCD panel is correct.

13. Reboot the printer by turning the power switch off and then on.

Changing Setting Options

The fax menu options can be set to the most frequently used modes.

To create your own default settings:

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Defaults Settings, and then press the (ok) button.

3. Select Fax Defaults, and then press the (ok) button.

4. Select the desired menu item, and then press the (ok) button.

5. Select the desired setting or enter the value using the numeric keypad, and then press the (ok) button.

6. Repeat steps 4 and 5, as needed.

7. To return to the previous screen, press the ↰ (**Back**) button.

Printing a Report

The following reports may be useful when using fax:

❏ Address Book List

    This list shows all the addresses currently stored in the memory of the printer as Address Book information.

❏ Fax Activity Report

    This report shows information about the recent 50 faxes you received or sent.

❏ Protocol Monitor

    This report shows the status of the protocol when the latest fax was being sent.

❏ Monitor Report

    This report shows the details of a fax job. This is printed when the fax was successfully sent.

❏ Transmission Report

    This report shows the details of a fax job. This is printed when the fax transmission failed.

❏ Fax Broadcast Report

    This report shows all the destinations of a broadcast fax and the transmission result for each destination.

Note:
The reports and lists are all printed in English.

To print a report or list:

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Report ⁄ List, and then press the ⊙ℴ button.

3. Select the report or list you want to print, and then press the ⊙ℴ button.

    The selected report or list is printed.

Note:
You cannot manually print Monitor Report, Transmission Report or Fax Broadcast Report using the procedure above. They are printed after a fax job completed according to the setting. For details on the setting of when to print them, see "Fax Transmit" on page 265 or "Fax Broadcast" on page 266.

Chapter 9
Using the Operator Panel Menus and Keypad

Understanding the Printer Menus

When you are not an administrator, the access to `Admin Menu` can be limited. This prevents unauthorized users from using the operator panel to inadvertently change the default menu settings that has been set by the administrator. However, you can change settings for individual print jobs using the print driver. Print settings selected from the print driver have precedence over the default menu settings selected from the operator panel.

Report / List

Use `Report / List` to print various types of reports and lists.

Note:
❏ *A password is required to enter the* `Report / List` *menu when* `Panel Lock Set` *is set to* `Enable`. *In this case, enter the password you specified, and press the* ⓞⓚ *button.*

❏ *The reports and lists are all printed in English.*

System Settings

Purpose:
To print a list of the information such as the printer name, serial number, and print volume.

For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF, network settings are also printed.

Panel Settings

Purpose:
To print a detailed list of all the settings on the operator panel menus.

Usage History

Purpose:
To print a detailed list of the jobs that have been processed. This list contains the last 50 jobs.

Error History

Purpose:
To print a detailed list of paper jams and fatal errors.

Protocol Monitor (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)

Purpose:
To print a detailed list of monitored protocols.

Address Book (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)

Purpose:
To print the list of all addresses stored as Address Book information.

Fax Activity (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)

Purpose:
To print the report of faxes you recently received or sent.

Billing Meters

Use Billing Meters to check the total number of printed pages.

Values:

Total Impression	Displays the total number of color and monochrome prints (Color Impression + Black Impression).
Color Impression	Displays the total number of color prints.
Black Impression	Displays the total number of monochrome prints.

Admin Menu

Use Admin Menu to configure a variety of printer features.

Note:
A password is required to enter the Admin Menu menu when Panel Lock Set is set to Enable. In this case, enter the password you specified, and press the (OK) button.

Phone Book (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)

Use the `Phone Book` menu to configure the speed dial and group dial settings.

Speed Dial

Purpose:
To store up to 99 frequently dialed numbers in speed dial locations.

Note:
The first eight entries are assigned to the one-touch buttons on the operator panel.

See Also:
"Storing a Number for Speed Dialing" on page 235.

Group Dial

Purpose:
To create a group of fax destinations and register it under a 2-digit dial code. Up to 6 group dial codes can be registered.

See Also:
"Setting Group Dial" on page 237.

Network (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)

Use the `Network` menu to change the printer settings affecting jobs sent to the printer through the network.

Note:
Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Ethernet

Purpose:
To specify the communication speed and the duplex settings of Ethernet. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on.

Values:

Auto*	Detects the Ethernet settings automatically.
10BASE-T Half	Uses 10base-T half-duplex.

10BASE-T Full	Uses 10base-T full-duplex.
100BASE-TX Half	Uses 100base-TX half-duplex.
100BASE-TX Full	Uses 100base-TX full-duplex.

Note:
This item is displayed only when the printer is connected with a wired network.

Status (Epson AcuLaser CX17WF Only)

Purpose:
To display the information on the wireless signal strength. No changes can be made on the operator panel to improve the status of the wireless connection.

Values:

Good	Indicates good signal strength.
Acceptable	Indicates marginal signal strength.
Low	Indicates insufficient signal strength.
No Reception	Indicates that no signal is received.

Note:
This item is displayed only when the printer is connected with a wireless network.

Wireless Setup (Epson AcuLaser CX17WF Only)

Purpose:
To configure the wireless network interface.

Values:

Manual Setup	Enter Network (SSID)	Specify a name to identify the wireless network. Up to 32 alphanumeric characters can be entered.		
	Infrastructure	Select when you configure the wireless setting through the access point such as a wireless router.		
		No Security	Specify **No Security** to configure the wireless setting without specifying a security method from WEP, WPA-PSK-TKIP, WPA-PSK-AES and WPA2-PSK-AES.	
		WEP(64Bit)	Specify the WEP 64bit Key to use through the wireless network. Enter 10 hexadecimal characters.	
			Transmit Key	Specify the transmit key from **WEP Key 1**, **WEP Key 2**, **WEP Key 3**, and **WEP Key 4**.
		WEP(128Bit)	Specify the WEP 128bit Key to use through the wireless network. Enter 26 hexadecimal characters.	
			Transmit Key	Specify the transmit key from **WEP Key 1**, **WEP Key 2**, **WEP Key 3**, and **WEP Key 4**.
		WPA-PSK-TKIP	Select to configure the wireless setting with the security method of WPA-PSK-TKIP.	
			PassPhrase Entry	Specify the pass phrase of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63 only when WPA-PSK-TKIP is selected for **Encryption Type**.
		WPA-PSK-AES	Select to configure the wireless setting with the security method of WPA-PSK-AES.	
			PassPhrase Entry	Specify the pass phrase of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63 only when WPA-PSK-AES is selected for **Encryption Type**.
		WPA2-PSK-AES	Select to configure the wireless setting with the security method of WPA2-PSK-AES.	
			PassPhrase Entry	Specify the pass phrase of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63 only when WPA2-PSK-AES is selected for **Encryption Type**.

	Ad-hoc	Select to configure the wireless setting without the access point such as a wireless router.		
		No Security	Specify **No Security** to configure the wireless setting without specifying the security method from WEP.	
		WEP(64Bit)	Specify the WEP 64bit Key to use through the wireless network. Enter 10 hexadecimal characters.	
			Transmit Key	Specify the transmit key from **WEP Key 1**, **WEP Key 2**, **WEP Key 3**, and **WEP Key 4**.
		WEP(128Bit)	Specify the WEP 128bit Key to use through the wireless network. Enter 26 hexadecimal characters.	
			Transmit Key	Specify the transmit key from **WEP Key 1**, **WEP Key 2**, **WEP Key 3**, and **WEP Key 4**.
WPS	**Push Button Control**	**PBC Start**	**No***	Disables the security method of WPS-PBC.
			Yes	Configures the wireless setting with the security method of WPS-PBC.
	PIN Code	**Start Configuration**	Configures the wireless setting using the PIN code assigned automatically by the printer.	
		Print PIN Code	Prints the PIN code. Confirm it when you enter the PIN code to your computer.	

Note:
This item is displayed only when the printer is connected with a wireless network.

Reset Wireless (Epson AcuLaser CX17WF Only)

Purpose:
To initialize wireless network settings. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all wireless network settings are reset to their factory default values.

Values:

No*	Does not reset the wireless setting.
Yes	Resets the wireless setting.

Note:
This item is displayed only when the printer is connected with a wireless network.

TCP/IP

Purpose:
To configure TCP/IP settings. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on.

Values:

IP Mode	Dual Stack*		Uses both IPv4 and IPv6 to set the IP address.
	IPv4		Uses IPv4 to set the IP address.
IPv4	Get IP Address	DHCP/AutoIP*	Automatically sets the IP address.
		BOOTP	Uses BOOTP to set the IP address.
		RARP	Uses RARP to set the IP address.
		DHCP	Uses DHCP to set the IP address.
		Panel	Enables the IP address entered on the operator panel.
	IP Address		Manually sets the IP address allocated to the printer.
	Subnet Mask		Manually sets the subnet mask.
	Gateway Address		Manually sets the gateway address.

Note:
To configure the IPv6 settings, use EpsonNet Config.

Protocol

Purpose:
To enable or disable each protocol. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on.

Values:

LPD	Disable	Disables the Line Printer Daemon (LPD) port.
	Enable*	Enables the LPD port.

Port 9100	Disable	Disables the Port 9100 port.
	Enable*	Enables the Port 9100 port.
WSD	Disable	Disables the WSD port.
	Enable*	Enables the WSD port.
SNMP	Disable	Disables the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) UDP port.
	Enable*	Enables the SNMP UDP port.
StatusMessenger	Disable	Disables the StatusMessenger feature.
	Enable*	Enables the StatusMessenger feature.
InternetServices	Disable	Disables an access to EpsonNet Config embedded in the printer.
	Enable*	Enables an access to EpsonNet Config embedded in the printer.
LLTD	Disable	Disables the LLTD.
	Enable*	Enables the LLTD.
Bonjour(mDNS)	Disable	Disables the Bonjour (mDNS).
	Enable*	Enables the Bonjour (mDNS).

Initialize NVM

Purpose:
To initialize wired network data stored in Non-Volatile Memory (NVM). After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all wired network settings are reset to their default values.

Values:

Yes	Initializes the wired network data stored in NVM.
No*	Does not initialize the wired network data stored in NVM.

Fax Settings (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)

Use the Fax Settings menu to configure the basic fax settings.

Note:
Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Ans Select

Purpose:
To select the default fax receiving mode.

Values:

TEL Mode	Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone, pressing the remote receive code, and then pressing ◇ (**Start**) button.
FAX Mode*	Automatically receives faxes.
TEL/FAX Mode	When the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in `Auto Ans. TEL/FAX`, and then the printer automatically receives a fax. If an incoming call is not a fax, the printer beeps from the internal speaker indicating that the call is a telephone call.
Ans/FAX Mode	The printer can share a telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the phone communication is using serial transmission in your country (such as Germany, Sweden, Denmark, Austria, Belgium, Italy, France and Switzerland), this mode is not supported.
DRPD Mode	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, a distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.

Auto Answer Fax

Purpose:
To set the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is 0 second.

Auto Ans. TEL/FAX

Purpose:
To set the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is six seconds.

Auto Ans. Ans/FAX

Purpose:

To set the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is 21 seconds.

Line Monitor

Purpose:

To set the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.

Values:

Off	Turns off the volume of the line monitor.
Min	Sets the volume of the line monitor.
Middle*	
Max	

Ring Tone Volume

Purpose:

To set the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when Ans Select is set to TEL/FAX Mode.

Values:

Off	Turns off the volume of the ring tone.
Min	Sets the volume of the ring tone.
Middle	
Max*	

Line Type

Purpose:

To select the line type.

Values:

PSTN*	Sets the line type to PSTN.
PBX	Sets the line type to PBX.

Dialing Type

Purpose:
To select the dialing type.

Values:

Tone*	Sets the dialing type to Tone.
DP (10pps)	Sets the dialing type to Dial Pulse (10 pulse per second).
DP (20pps)	Sets the dialing type to Dial Pulse (20 pulse per second).

Note:
❏ *This menu is not displayed when* Region *is set to* South Africa.

❏ *The available values vary depending on the region set for* Region.

Interval Timer

Purpose:
To specify the interval between transmission attempts within the range of 3 to 255 seconds. The default is eight seconds.

Number of Redial

Purpose:
To specify the number of redial attempts to make when the destination fax number is busy, within the range of 0 to 9. If you enter **0**, the printer will not redial. The default is 3.

Redial Delay

Purpose:
To specify the interval between redial attempts within the range of 1 to 15 minutes. The default is one minute.

Junk Fax Filter

Purpose:
To reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers by accepting faxes only from the fax numbers registered in the Address Book.

Values:

Off*	Does not reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers.
On	Rejects faxes sent from unwanted numbers.

Note:
Ensure to register the fax numbers you want to accept faxes from in the Address Book before using Junk Fax Filter.

Remote Receive

Purpose:
To receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone after picking up the handset of the telephone.

Values:

Off*	Does not receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
On	Receives a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.

Remote Rcv Tone

Purpose:
To specify the remote receive code in two digits to start Remote Receive.

Send Header

Purpose:
To print the information of sender on the header of faxes.

Values:

Off	Does not print the information of sender on the header of faxes.
On*	Prints the information of sender on the header of faxes.

Company Name

Purpose:
To set the name of sender to be printed on the header of faxes. Up to 30 alphanumeric characters can be entered.

Phone Number

Purpose:
To set the fax number of the printer to be printed on the header of faxes.

Fax Cover Page

Purpose:
To set whether to attach a cover page to faxes.

Values:

Off*	Does not attach a cover page to faxes.
On	Attaches a cover page to faxes.

DRPD Pattern

Purpose:
To provide a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern.

Values:

Pattern1-7	DRPD is a service provided by some telephone companies. DRPD patterns are specified by your telephone company. The patterns provided with your printer are shown below:
	Pattern1
	Pattern2
	Pattern3
	Pattern4
	Pattern5
	Pattern6
	Pattern7
	Ask your telephone company which pattern you need to select to use this service. For example, Pattern7 is the New Zealand FaxAbility distinctive ringing pattern: rings for 400ms, stops for 800ms, rings for 400ms and stops for 1400ms. This pattern is repeated over and over again. This printer only responds to Distinctive Alert cadence(s) DA4 in New Zealand.

Prefix Dial

Purpose:
To select whether to set a prefix dial number.

Values:

Off*	Does not set a prefix dial number.
On	Sets a prefix dial number.

Prefix Dial Num

Purpose:

To set a prefix dial number of up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX).

Discard Size

Purpose:

To set whether to discard text or images at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit onto the output paper.

Values:

Off	Prints any excess at the bottom of a fax page without discarding it.
On	Discards any excess at the bottom of a fax page.
Auto Reduction*	Automatically reduces a fax page to fit it onto the output paper.

ECM

Purpose:

To set whether to enable the Error Correction Mode (ECM). To use the ECM, the remote machines must also support the ECM.

Values:

Off	Disable the ECM.
On*	Enables the ECM.

Extel Hook Thresh

Purpose:

To select the external telephone hook detection threshold for the condition in which a telephone line is not being used.

Values:

Lower	Sets the external telephone hook detection threshold to `Lower`.
Normal*	Sets the external telephone hook detection threshold to `Normal`.
Higher	Sets the external telephone hook detection threshold to `Higher`.

Modem Speed

Purpose:
To specify the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.

Values:

2.4 Kbps
4.8 Kbps
9.6 Kbps
14.4 Kbps
33.6 Kbps*

Fax Activity

Purpose:
To set whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.

Values:

Auto Print*	Automatically prints a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
No Auto Print	Does not automatically print a fax activity report.

Fax Transmit

Purpose:
To set whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.

Values:

Print Always	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission.
Print On Error*	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.
Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission.

Fax Broadcast

Purpose:
To set whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission to multiple destinations or only when an error occurs.

Values:

Print Always*	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission.
Print On Error	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.
Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission to multiple destinations.

Region

Purpose:
To select the region where the printer is used.

System Settings

Use the System Settings menu to configure a variety of printer features.

Note:
Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Power Saving Timer

Purpose:
To specify the time for transition to the Power Saver mode.

Values:

Low Power Timer	5min*	Specifies the time taken by the printer before it enters the Low Power mode after it finishes a job.
	5–30min	
Sleep Timer	6min*	Specifies the time taken by the printer before it enters the Sleep mode after it goes into the Low Power mode.
	1–6min	

Enter **5** in Low Power Timer to put the printer in the Low Power mode five minutes after it finishes a job. This uses less energy, but requires more warm-up time for the printer. Enter **5** if your printer shares an electrical circuit with room lighting and you notice lights flickering.

Select a high value if your printer is in constant use. In most circumstances, this keeps the printer ready to operate with minimum warm-up time. Select a value between 5 and 30 minutes for the Low Power mode if you want a balance between energy consumption and a shorter warm-up period.

The printer automatically returns to the standby mode from the Power Saver mode when it receives data from the computer. In the Low Power mode, you can also return the printer to the standby mode by pressing any button on the operator panel. In the Sleep mode, you can return the printer to the standby mode by pressing the ⊘ (**Energy Saver**) button.

Auto Reset

Purpose:
To automatically reset the settings for copying, scanning, or faxing to the defaults and return to the standby mode after you do not specify any settings for the specified time. (The fax feature is available only on the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF.)

Values:

| 45sec* |
| 1min |
| 2min |
| 3min |
| 4min |

Fault Time-Out

Purpose:
To specify the time taken by the printer before it cancels jobs that stop abnormally. The job is cancelled if it times out.

Values:

Off		Disables the fault time-out.
On	**60sec***	Specifies the time taken by the printer before it cancels for jobs that stop abnormally.
	3–300sec	

Job Time-Out

Purpose:
To specify the amount of time that the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer. The print job is cancelled if it times out.

Values:

Off		Disables the job time-out.
On	**30sec***	Specifies the amount of time that the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer.
	5–300sec	

Clock Settings

Purpose:
To set the date and time, and regional time zone of the printer.

Values:

Set Date		Specifies the current date.
Set Time		Specifies the current time.
Date Format	**yy / mm / dd**	Specifies the date format.
	mm / dd / yy	
	dd / mm / yy*	

Time Format	12H*	Specifies the time format.
	24H	
Time Zone	Specifies the time zone.	

Alert Tone

Purpose:
To configure settings for tones emitted by the printer during operation or when a warning message appears.

Values:

Panel Select Tone	Off*	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is correct.
	Min	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the operator panel input is correct.
	Middle	
	Max	
Panel Alert Tone	Off*	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is incorrect.
	Min	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the operator panel input is incorrect.
	Middle	
	Max	
Auto Clear Alert	Off*	Does not emit a tone before the printer performs auto clear.
	Min	Emits a tone at the specified volume five seconds before the printer performs auto clear.
	Middle	
	Max	
Job Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when a job is complete.
	Min	Emits a tone at the specified volume when a job is complete.
	Middle*	
	Max	

Alert Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when a problem occurs.
	Min	Emits a tone at the specified volume when a problem occurs.
	Middle*	
	Max	
Out of Paper	Off	Does not emit a tone when the printer runs out of paper.
	Min	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the printer runs out of paper.
	Middle*	
	Max	
All Tones	Off	Disables all the alert tones.
	Min	Sets the volume of all the alert tones at once.
	Middle	
	Max	

mm / inch

Purpose:
To specify the measurement unit displayed after the numeric value on the operator panel.

Values:

| Millimeters (mm)* | Specifies the default measurement unit. |
| Inches (") | |

Low Toner Alert Msg

Purpose:
To specify whether to show the alert message when the toner is low.

Values:

| Off | Does not show the alert message when the toner is low. |
| On* | Shows the alert message when the toner is low. |

Power On Wizard

Purpose:
To perform initial settings for the printer.

See Also:
"Setting Initial Settings on the Operator Panel" on page 32

Values:

Yes	Performs the initial settings for the printer.
No*	Does not perform the initial settings for the printer.

Maintenance

Use the `Maintenance` menu to initialize Non-Volatile Memory (NVM), configure the paper type adjustment settings, and configure the security settings.

Note:
Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

F/W Version

Purpose:
To display the version of the controller.

Adjust Paper Type

Purpose:
To adjust the paper type.

Values:

Plain	Lightweight
	Heavyweight*
Labels	Lightweight
	Heavyweight*

Adjust BTR

Purpose:
To specify the optimum voltage settings for printing for the transfer roller (BTR). To lower the voltage, set negative values. To increase, set positive values.

The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. If you see mottles on the print output, try to increase the voltage. If you see white spots on the print output, try to decrease the voltage.

Note:
The print quality changes depending on the values you select for this item.

Values:

Plain	0*
	-3 – +3
Bond	0*
	-3 – +3
Light Card	0*
	-3 – +3
LW Gloss Card	0*
	-3 – +3
Labels	0*
	-3 – +3
Recycled	0*
	-3 – +3
Envelope	0*
	-3 – +3

Adjust Fusing Unit

Purpose:
To specify the optimum temperature settings for printing for the fusing unit. To lower the temperature, set negative values. To increase, set positive values.

The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. When the printed paper has curled, try to lower the temperature. When the toner does not fuse on the paper properly, try to increase the temperature.

Note:
The print quality changes depending on the values you select for this item.

Values:

Plain	0*
	-3 – +3
Bond	0*
	-3 – +3
Light Card	0*
	-3 – +3
LW Gloss Card	0*
	-3 – +3
Labels	0*
	-3 – +3
Recycled	0*
	-3 – +3
Envelope	0*
	-3 – +3

Auto Regi Adjust

Purpose:
To specify whether to automatically adjust color registration.

Values:

Off	Does not automatically adjust color registration.
On*	Automatically adjusts color registration.

Adjust ColorRegi

Purpose:
To automatically adjust color registration.

Color registration adjustment need to be made during the initial setup of the printer or when the printer is moved to a different location.

Values:

Auto Adjust	Yes	Automatically corrects color registration.
	No*	Does not correct color registration automatically.

Clean Developer

Purpose:
To rotate the developer motor and stir the toner in the toner cartridge.

Values:

Yes	Stirs the toner in a new toner cartridge.
No*	Does not stir the toner in a new toner cartridge.

Toner Refresh

Purpose:
To use up a toner cartridge when you need to replace it before the end of its life, or to stir the toner in a new toner cartridge.

Values:

Yellow	Yes	Cleans the toner in the yellow toner cartridge.
	No*	Does not clean the toner in the yellow toner cartridge.
Magenta	Yes	Cleans the toner in the magenta toner cartridge.
	No*	Does not clean the toner in the magenta toner cartridge.
Cyan	Yes	Cleans the toner in the cyan toner cartridge.
	No*	Does not clean the toner in the cyan toner cartridge.

Black	Yes	Cleans the toner in the black toner cartridge.
	No*	Does not clean the toner in the black toner cartridge.

BTR Refresh

Purpose:
Specify whether to execute counter measures for curling/separating discharge of the paper.

Values:

Off*	Does not automatically execute counter measures for curling/separating discharge of the paper.
On	Automatically executes counter measures for curling/separating discharge of the paper.

Initialize NVM

Purpose:
To initialize NVM for system parameters, Address Book data for fax, or Address Book data for e-mail. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, the menu parameters or data, except the parameters for the network, are reset to their factory default values. (Address Book is available only on the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF.)

See Also:
"Resetting to Factory Defaults" on page 298

Values:

Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF:

User Fax Section	Yes	Initializes the fax number entries in the Address Book.
	No*	Does not initialize the fax number entries in the Address Book.
User Scan Section	Yes	Initializes the e-mail and server address entries in the Address Book.
	No*	Does not initialize the e-mail and server address entries in the Address Book.
System Section	Yes	Initializes the system parameters.
	No*	Does not initialize the system parameters.

<u>Epson AcuLaser CX17:</u>

System Section	**Yes**	Initializes the system parameters.
	No*	Does not initialize the system parameters.

Non-Genuine Mode

Purpose:
To use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.

Note:
❏ *Using non-genuine toner cartridges may make some printer features unusable, reduce print quality and decrease the reliability of your printer. Epson recommends only new Epson brand toner cartridges for your printer. Epson does not provide warranty coverage for problems caused by using consumables not supplied by Epson.*

❏ *Before you use toner cartridge of another manufacturer, be sure to restart the printer.*

Values:

Off*	Does not use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.
On	Uses toner cartridge of another manufacturer.

Adjust Altitude

Purpose:
To specify the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.

The discharge phenomenon for charging the photo conductor varies with barometric pressure. Adjustments are performed by specifying the altitude of the location where the printer is being used.

Note:
An incorrect altitude adjustment setting leads to poor printing quality, incorrect indication of remaining toner.

Values:

0m*	Specifies the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.
1000m	
2000m	
3000m	

Secure Settings

Use the Secure Settings menu to set a password to limit access to the menus. This prevents items from being changed accidentally.

Note:
Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Panel Lock

Purpose:
To restrict access to Admin Menu and Report / List with a password.

See Also:
"Panel Lock Function" on page 295

Note:
❏ *For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF, you can select* Disable *for* Panel Lock Set *when all items under* Service Lock *are set to* Unlocked *and* Secure Receive Set *is set to* Disable.

❏ *For the Epson AcuLaser CX17, you can select* Disable *for* Panel Lock Set *when all items under* Service Lock *are set to* Unlocked.

Values:

Panel Lock Set	Disable*	Does not restrict access to Admin Menu and Report / List with a password.
	Enable	Restricts access to Admin Menu and Report / List with a password.
Change Password	0000*–9999	Sets or changes the password required to access Admin Menu and Report / List.

Service Lock

Purpose:
To specify whether to enable each of the printer services or to require a password to use the services, and to set or change the password.

See Also:
"Limiting Access to Printer Operations" on page 297

Note:
You can access to the items under `Service Lock` only when `Panel Lock Set` is set to `Enable`.

Values:

Copy	**Unlocked***	Enables the Copy service.
	Locked	Disables the Copy service.
	Password Locked	Enables the Copy service, but requires a password.
	Color Pass. Locked	Enables the Copy service with a color mode, but requires a password.
FAX (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)	**Unlocked***	Enables the FAX service.
	Locked	Disables the FAX service (the printer will not send or receive faxes).
	Password Locked	Enables the FAX services, but requires a password to send faxes (does not require a password to receive incoming faxes).
Scan	**Unlocked***	Enables the Scan service.
	Locked	Disables the Scan service.
	Password Locked	Enables the Scan service, but requires a password.
Print from USB	**Unlocked***	Enables the Print From USB Memory service.
	Locked	Disables the Print From USB Memory service.
	Password Locked	Enables the Print From USB Memory service, but requires a password.
	Color Pass. Locked	Enables the Print From USB Memory service with a color mode, but requires a password.
Change Password	**0000***–**9999**	Sets or changes the password required to use the Copy, FAX, Scan, and Print from USB Memory services.

Secure Receive (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)

Purpose:
To specify whether to require a password to print incoming faxes, and to set or change the password. When `Secure Receive Set` is set to `Enable`, the printer stores incoming faxes and prints them when the correct password is entered on the operator panel.

Note:
You can access to the items under `Secure Receive` only when `Panel Lock Set` is set to `Enable`.

Values:

Secure Receive Set	**Disable***	Does not require a password to print incoming faxes.
	Enable	Requires a password to print incoming faxes.
Change Password	**0000*–9999**	Sets or changes the password required to print incoming faxes.

Scan to E-Mail (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)

Use the `Scan to E-Mail` menu to edit the transmission source.

Note:
Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Edit From Field

Purpose:
To enable or disable editing of the transmission source.

Values:

Disable	Disables editing of the transmission source.
Enable*	Enables editing of the transmission source.

USB Settings

Use the `USB Settings` menu to change printer settings affecting a USB port.

Note:
Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Port Status

Purpose:
To enable or disable the USB interface.

Values:

Disable	Disables the USB interface.
Enable*	Enables the USB interface.

Defaults Settings

Use the `Defaults Settings` menu to configure the default copy, scan, and fax settings of the printer. (The fax feature is available only on the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF.)

Copy Defaults

Use the `Copy Defaults` menus to configure a variety of copy features.

Note:
Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Color

Purpose:
To set whether to make copies in color or in black and white.

Values:

Black & White	Prints in black and white mode.
Color*	Prints in color mode.

Collated

Purpose:
To sort the copy job.

Values:

Uncollated*	Does not sort the copy job.

Collated	Sorts the copy job.

Reduce/Enlarge

Purpose:
To set the default copy reduction/enlargement ratio.

Values:

<u>mm series</u>

200%
A5 -> A4(141%)
A5 -> B5(122%)
100%*
B5 -> A5(81%)
A4 -> A5(70%)
50%

<u>inch series</u>

200%
Stmt -> Lgl(154%)
Stmt -> Ltr(129%)
100%*
Lgl -> Ltr (78%)
Ldgr -> Ltr(64%)
50%

Note:
❏ *You can also use the numeric keypad to input the desired zoom ratio from 25% to 400%, or press the*
   ▶ *button to enlarge the zoom ratio or press the* ◀ *button to reduce the zoom ratio in 1% intervals.*

❏ *This item is available only when* N-Up *is set to* Off *or* Manual.

Document Size

Purpose:
To specify the default document size.

Values:

A4 (210 × 297mm)*
A5 (148 × 210mm)
B5 (182 × 257mm)
Letter (8.5 × 11")
Folio (8.5 × 13") (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)
Legal (8.5 × 14") (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)
Executive (7.25 × 10.5")

Document Type

Purpose:
To select the copy image quality.

Values:

Text	Suitable for documents with text.
Mixed*	Suitable for documents with both text and photos/gray tones.
Photo	Suitable for documents with photos.

Lighten/Darken

Purpose:
To set the default copy density level.

Values:

Lighten2	Makes the copy lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
Lighten1	
Normal*	Works well with standard type or printed documents.

| Darken1 | Makes the copy darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings. |
| Darken2 | |

Sharpness

Purpose:
To set the default sharpness level.

Values:

Sharpest	Makes the copy sharper than the original.
Sharper	
Normal*	Does not make the copy sharper or softer than the original.
Softer	Makes the copy softer than the original.
Softest	

Auto Exposure

Purpose:
To suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.

Values:

| Off | Does not suppress the background. |
| On* | Suppresses the background of the original to enhance text on the copy. |

Color Balance R

Purpose:
To specify the default color balance level of red within the range of -2 to +2. The factory default menu setting is 0.

Color Balance G

Purpose:
To specify the default color balance level of green within the range of -2 to +2. The factory default menu setting is 0.

Color Balance B

Purpose:
To specify the default color balance level of blue within the range of -2 to +2. The factory default menu setting is 0.

Gray Balance

Purpose:
To specify the default gray balance level within the range of -2 to +2. The factory default menu setting is 0.

Note:
This option is effective only for black and white copying.

N-Up

Purpose:
To print two original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.

Values:

Off*	Does not perform N-Up printing.
Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
ID Card Copy	Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the original size.
Manual	Prints the original pages onto the one sheet of paper in the size specified in `Reduce/Enlarge`.

Margin Top/Bottom

Purpose:
To specify the value of the top and bottom margins.

Values:

4mm***/0.2 inch***	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
0-50mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

Margin Left/Right

Purpose:
To specify the value of the left and right margins.

Values:

4mm*/0.2 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
0-50mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

Margin Middle

Purpose:
To specify the value of the middle margin.

Values:

0mm*/0.0 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
0-50mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

Scan Defaults

Use the Scan Defaults menus to configure a variety of scanner features.

Note:
Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Scan to Network (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)

Purpose:
To store the scanned image on a network server or on a computer.

Values:

Computer(Network)*	Stores the scanned image on a computer using the Server Message Block (SMB) protocol.
Server(FTP)	Stores the scanned image on a server using the FTP protocol.

File Format

Purpose:
To specify the file format to save the scanned image.

Values:

PDF*
TIFF
JPEG

Color

Purpose:
To set the color mode.

Values:

Black & White	Scans in black and white mode. This is available only when `File Format` is set to `PDF` or `TIFF`.
Color*	Scans in color mode.

Color Button Set

Purpose:
To assign color mode to the **Color Mode** button.

Values:

B&W Button	Black & White*	Scans in black and white when `Black & White` is selected for a color mode.
	Grayscale	Scans in gray scale when `Black & White` is selected for a color mode.
Color Button	Color*	Scans in color when `Color` is selected for a color mode.
	Color(Photo)	Scans in color (photo) when `Color` is selected for a color mode. This is suitable for photographic images.

Resolution

Purpose:
To specify the default scan resolution.

Values:

200 × 200dpi*
300 × 300dpi
400 × 400dpi
600 × 600dpi

Document Size

Purpose:
To specify the default document size.

Values:

A4 (210 × 297mm)*
A5 (148 × 210mm)
B5 (182 × 257mm)
Letter (8.5 × 11")
Folio (8.5 × 13") (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)
Legal (8.5 × 14") (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)
Executive (7.25 × 10.5")

Lighten/Darken

Purpose:
To set the default scan density level.

Values:

Lighten2	Makes the scanned image lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
Lighten1	

Normal*	Works well with standard type or printed documents.
Darken1	Makes the scanned image darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darken2	

Sharpness

Purpose:
To set the default sharpness level.

Values:

Sharpest	Makes the scanned image sharper than the original.
Sharper	
Normal*	Does not make the scanned image sharper or softer than the original.
Softer	Makes the scanned image softer than the original.
Softest	

Auto Exposure

Purpose:
To suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the scanned image.

Values:

Off	Does not suppress the background.
On*	Suppresses the background of the original to enhance text on the scanned image.

Margin Top/Bottom

Purpose:
To specify the value of the top and bottom margins.

Values:

2mm*/0.1 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
0-50mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

Margin Left/Right

Purpose:
To specify the value of the left and right margins.

Values:

2mm*/**0.1 inch***	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
0-50mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

Margin Middle

Purpose:
To specify the value of the middle margin.

Values:

0mm*/**0.0 inch***	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
0-50mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

TIFF File Format

Purpose:
To specify the TIFF file format.

Values:

TIFF V6*
TTN2

Image Compression

Purpose:
To specify the image compression level.

Values:

Higher	Sets the image compression level to `Higher`.
Normal*	Sets the image compression level to `Normal`.

Lower	Sets the image compression level to `Lower`.

Max E-Mail Size (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)

Purpose:
To specify the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent, within the range of 50 K bytes to 16384 K bytes. The default is 2048 K bytes.

Fax Defaults (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)

Use the `Fax Defaults` menus to configure a variety of fax features.

Note:
❏ *The Fax service cannot be used unless you set up a region under* `Region`. *If* `Region` *is not set up, a message* `Set The Region Code` *appears on the LCD panel.*

❏ *Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.*

Resolution

Purpose:
To specify the resolution level to be used for fax transmission.

Values:

Standard*	Suitable for documents with normal sized characters.
Fine	Suitable for documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
Super Fine	Suitable for documents containing extremely fine detail. The Super Fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the super fine resolution. See the notes below.
Ultra Fine	Suitable for documents containing photographic images.

Note:
Faxes scanned in the Super Fine mode transmit at the highest resolution supported by the receiving device.

Document Type

Purpose:
To select the default document type.

Values:

Text*	Suitable for documents with text.
Photo	Suitable for documents with photos.

Lighten/Darken

Purpose:
To set the default copy density level.

Values:

Lighten2	Makes the fax lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
Lighten1	
Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Darken1	Makes the fax darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darken2	

Delayed Start

Purpose:
This feature enables you to set a specific time for the fax transmission to start. Once Delayed Start mode is activated, your printer stores all of the documents to be faxed into its memory and sends them at the specified time. After faxing in the Delayed Start mode is complete, the data in the memory is cleared.

Values:

21:00*/PM9:00*	Specify the fax transmission start time when sending a fax at a specified time.
0:00 - 23:59 / AM/PM1:00 - 12:59	

Note:
A maximum of 19 delayed fax jobs can be stored in this printer.

Print from USB Defaults

Note:
Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Layout

Purpose:
To automatically enlarge print documents when you print directly from a USB storage device.

Values:

Auto*	Automatically enlarges print documents to fit on the paper.
Off	Does not enlarge print documents.

Tray Settings

Use the `Tray Settings` menu to set the paper size and type of paper loaded in the multipurpose feeder (MPF).

MPF

Note:
Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Purpose:
To specify the paper loaded in the MPF.

Values:

Paper Size	A4 (210 × 297mm)*			
	A5 (148 × 210mm)			
	B5 (182 × 257mm)			
	Letter (8.5 × 11")			
	Folio (8.5 × 13")			
	Legal (8.5 × 14")			
	Executive (7.25 × 10.5")			
	Envelope #10 (4.1×9.5")			
	Monarch Env. (3.9×7.5")			
	Monarch Env. L (7.5×3.9")			
	DL Env. (110×220mm)			
	DL Env. L (220×110mm)			
	C5 Envelope (162 × 229mm)			
	Custom Size	Portrait(Y)	297mm*/11.7inch*	Specifies the length of the custom size paper.
			127 - 355mm/5.0-14.0inch	
		Landscape(X)	210mm*/8.3inch*	Specifies the width of the custom size paper.
			77 - 215mm/3.0-8.5inch	

Paper Type	Plain*	
	Bond	
	Light Card	
	LW Gloss Card	
	Labels	
	Recycled	
	Envelope	
	Plain S2	
	Bond S2	
	Light Card S2	
	LW Gloss Card S2	
	Recycled S2	
Display Screen	Off	Does not display a screen.
	On*	Displays a screen that prompts the user to set Paper Size and Paper Type when the paper is loaded in the MPF.

Note:
For more information on supported paper sizes, see "Usable Print Media" on page 116.

Panel Language

Note:
❏ *Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.*

❏ *The languages supported by the printer are different depending on the region.*

Purpose:
To specify the language to be used on the operator panel.

See Also:
"Adjusting the Language" on page 152

Values:

English*
Français
Italiano
Deutsch
Español
Nederlands
Português Europeu
Türkçe
Русский
繁體中文
한국어

Panel Lock Function

This feature prevents unauthorized users from changing settings on the operator panel made by the administrator. However, you can select settings for individual print jobs using the print driver.

Enabling the Panel Lock

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Admin Menu, and then press the (OK) button.

3. Select Secure Settings, and then press the (OK) button.

4. Select Panel Lock, and then press the (OK) button.

5. Select Panel Lock Set, and then press the (OK) button.

6. Select Enable, and then press the (OK) button.

7. As necessary, select Change Password, and change the password using the numeric keypad. Then, press the (OK) button.

Note:
The factory-default panel password is 0000.

Note:
❏ *Be sure to remember the password. The procedure described below allows you to reset the password. However, for the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF, the settings for the Address Book are cleared. 1. Turn off the printer. Then, while holding the* **System** *button, turn on the printer.*

❏ *If you change the password while* Panel Lock Set *is* Enable, *perform steps 1 to 2. Enter the current password, and then press the* (OK) *button. Perform steps 3 to 4. Select* Change Password, *and then press the* (OK) *button. Enter the new password, and then press the* (OK) *button. This will change the password.*

Disabling the Panel Lock

Note:
❏ *For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF, you can select* Disable *for* Panel Lock Set *when all items under* Service Lock *are set to* Unlocked *and* Secure Receive Set *is set to* Disable.

❏ *For the Epson AcuLaser CX17, you can select* Disable *for* Panel Lock Set *when all items under* Service Lock *are set to* Unlocked.

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Admin Menu, and then press the (OK) button.

3. Enter the password, and then press the (OK) button.

4. Select Secure Settings, and then press the (OK) button.

5. Select Panel Lock, and then press the (OK) button.

6. Select Panel Lock Set, and then press the (OK) button.

7. Select Disable, and then press the (OK) button.

Limiting Access to Printer Operations

Enabling the Copy Lock, FAX Lock, Scan Lock, and Print from USB Lock options limits access to copy, fax, scan, and Print From USB Memory operations. (FAX Lock is available only on the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF.)

Taking Copy Lock as an example, the following procedure explains how to enable or disable the option. Use the same procedure to enable or disable FAX Lock, Scan Lock, or Print from USB Lock.

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Admin Menu, and then press the (OK) button.

3. Select Secure Settings, and then press the (OK) button.

4. Select Panel Lock, and then press the (OK) button.

5. Select Panel Lock Set, and then press the (OK) button.

6. Select Enable, and then press the (OK) button.

7. As necessary, select Change Password, and change the password using the numeric keypad. Then, press the (OK) button.

   Note:
   The default password is 0000.

8. Press the (**Back**) button.

9. Select Service Lock, and then press the (OK) button.

10. Select Copy, and then press the (OK) button.

11. Select one of the following option, and then press the (OK) button.

   ❏ Unlocked

   ❏ Locked

   ❏ Password Locked

   ❏ Color Pass. Locked (available only for Copy Lock and Print from USB Lock)

Setting the Time for the Power Saver Mode

You can set the power saving timer for the printer. The printer switches to the Power Saver mode after the specified time.

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Admin Menu, and then press the (ok) button.

3. Select System Settings, and then press the (ok) button.

4. Select Power Saving Timer, and then press the (ok) button.

5. Select Low Power Timer or Sleep Timer, and then press the (ok) button.

6. Press the ▼ or ▲ button or enter the desired value using the numeric keypad, and then press the (ok) button.

   You can select from 5–30 minutes for Low Power Timer or 1–6 minutes for Sleep Timer.

7. To return to the previous screen, press the ↺ (**Back**) button.

Resetting to Factory Defaults

After executing Initialize NVM and rebooting the printer, the menu parameters or data are reset to their factory default values.

Note:
The following procedure does not initialize the network settings.

❑ *For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF, to initialize the wired network settings, refer to "Initialize NVM" on page 257.*

❑ *For the Epson AcuLaser CX17WF, to initialize the wireless network settings, refer to "Reset Wireless (Epson AcuLaser CX17WF Only)" on page 255.*

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Admin Menu, and then press the (ok) button.

3. Select Maintenance, and then press the (ok) button.

4.   Select `Initialize NVM`, and then press the (OK) button.

5.   Select `System Section` to initialize the menu parameters, and then press the (OK) button.

For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF, select `User Fax Section` to initialize the Address Book data for fax, and select `User Scan Section` to initialize the Address Book data for e-mail.

6.   Select `Yes`, and then press the (OK) button.

The printer restarts automatically to apply the settings.

Using the Numeric Keypad

As you perform various tasks, you may need to enter numbers. For example, when you enter the password, you enter four-digit number.

For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF, you may also need to enter names. For example, when you set up your printer, you enter your name or your company name. When you store speed dial or group dial numbers, you need to enter the corresponding names.
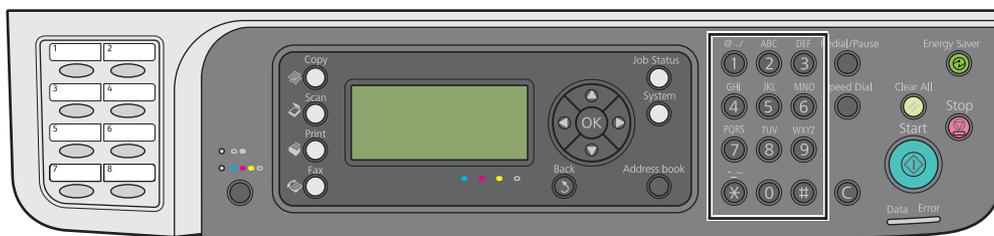
Entering Characters (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)

When prompted to enter a letter, press the appropriate button until the correct letter appears on the LCD panel.

For example, to enter the letter O, press **6**.

❑   Each time you press **6**, the display shows a different letter, `m`, `n`, `o`, `M`, `N`, `O` and finally `6`.

❑   To enter additional letters, repeat the first step.

❑   Press the (OK) button when you are finished.

Key	Assigned numbers, letters or characters
1	1 @ . _ - (space) \ & ( ) ! " # $ % ' ~ ^ | ` ; : ? , + * / = [ ] { } < >
2	a b c A B C 2
3	d e f D E F 3
4	g h i G H I 4
5	j k l J K L 5
6	m n o M N O 6
7	p q r s P Q R S 7
8	t u v T U V 8
9	w x y z W X Y Z 9
0	0
*	- _ ~
#	(space) & ( )

Changing Numbers or Names

If an incorrect number or name is entered, press the **C** (**Clear**) button to clear the number or character. Then enter the correct number or character.

Chapter 10

Troubleshooting

Clearing Jams

Careful selection of appropriate print media and proper loading allow you to avoid most jams.

See Also:
❏ *"About Print Media" on page 113*

❏ *"Supported Print Media" on page 116*

Note:
Before buying large quantities of any print media, it is recommended that you try a sample first.

Avoiding Jams

❏ Use only recommended print media.

❏ See "Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 119 and "Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 127 to load print media properly.

❏ Do not overload the print media sources. Ensure that the stacked print media does not exceed the maximum height indicated on the paper width guides.

❏ Do not load wrinkled, creased, damp, or curled print media.

❏ Flex, fan, and straighten print media before you load it. If a jam occurs with print media, try feeding one sheet at a time through the MPF or the PSI.

❏ Do not use print media that you have cut or trimmed.

❏ Do not mix print media sizes, weights, or types in the same print media source.

❏ Ensure that the recommended print side is face up when you insert the print media.

❏ Keep print media stored in an acceptable environment.

❏ Do not remove the PSI during a print job.

❏ Ensure that all cables that connect to the printer are correctly attached.

❏ Overtightening the guides may cause jams.

See Also:
❏ *"About Print Media" on page 113*

❏ *"Supported Print Media" on page 116*

❏ *"Print Media Storage Guidelines" on page 115*

Identifying the Location of Paper Jams

> **Caution:**
> *Do not attempt to remove a paper jammed deeply inside the product, particularly a paper wrapped around a Fusing Unit or a heat roller. Otherwise, it may cause injuries or burns. Switch off the product promptly and contact your local Epson representative.*

Important:
Do not attempt to clear any jams using tools or instruments. This may permanently damage the printer.

The following illustration shows where paper jams may occur along the print media path.
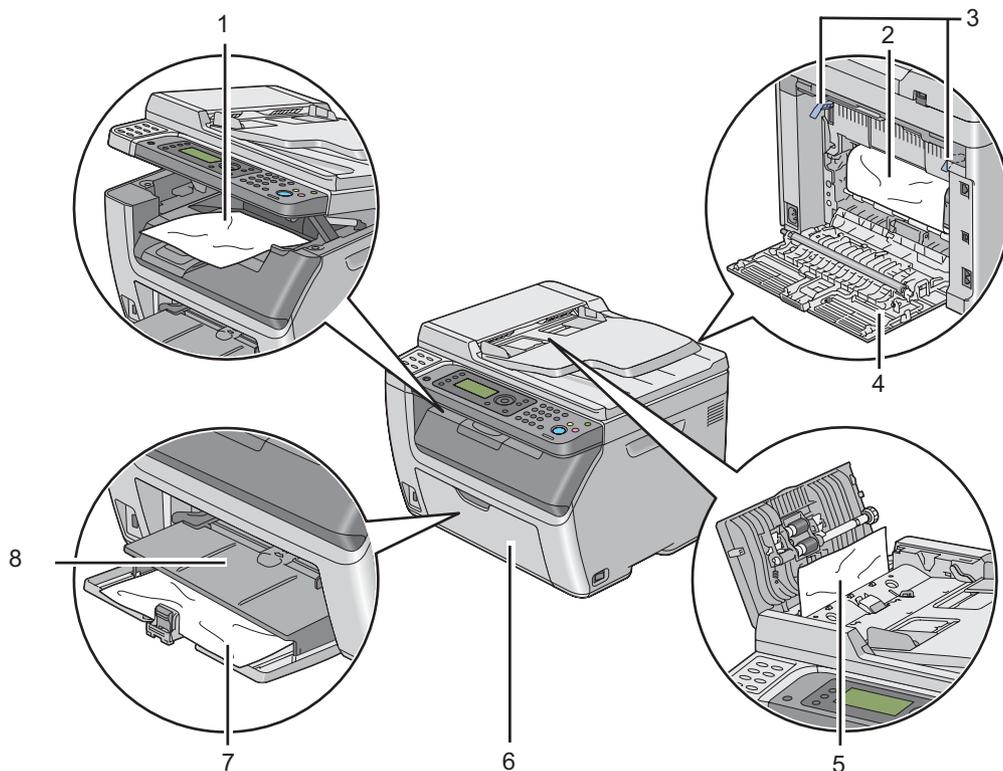
1	Center Output Tray
2	Transfer Drum
3	Levers
4	Rear Cover
5	ADF Cover (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF only)
6	Front Cover
7	Multipurpose feeder (MPF)
8	Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)

Clearing Paper Jams From the ADF (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)

When a document jams while it passes through the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF), remove jams in the following procedure.

Important:
❏ *To prevent electric shock, always turn off the printer and disconnect the power cord from the grounded outlet before performing maintenance.*

❏ *To avoid burns, do not clear paper jams immediately after printing. The fusing unit becomes extremely hot during use.*

Note:
To resolve the error displayed on the LCD panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

1. Open the ADF cover.
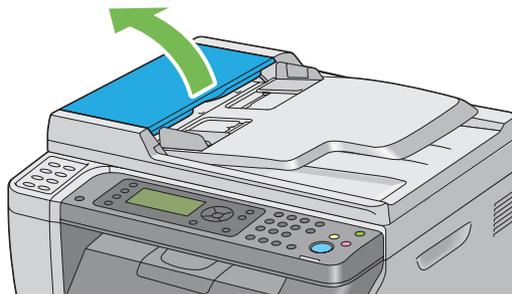
2. Remove the jammed document by carefully pulling it in the direction of the arrow shown in the following illustration.
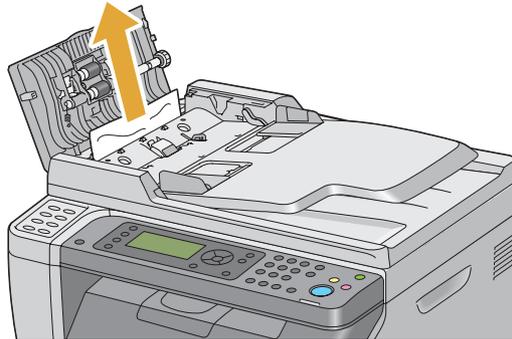
3. If you find it difficult to pull the document, open the document feeder tray.
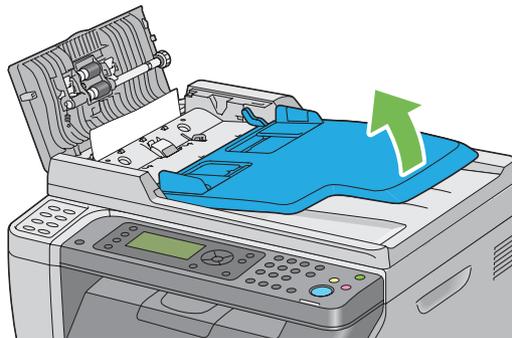
4. Remove the jammed document from the document output tray.
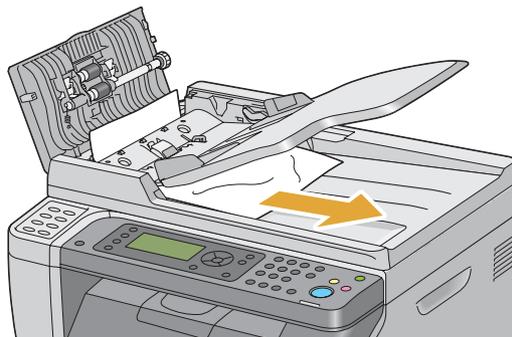
5. Close the document feeder tray.
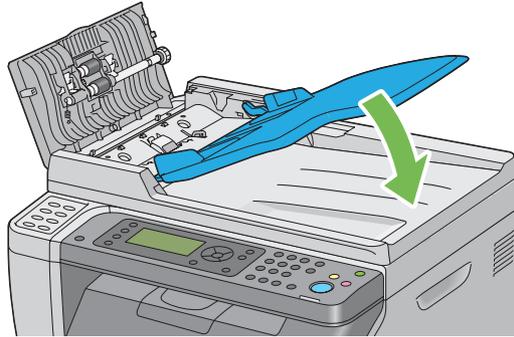
6. Close the ADF cover, and then load the documents back into the ADF.

Note:
Ensure that you adjust the document guides before printing a Legal-size document.

7. If you cannot remove the jammed document from the document output tray or cannot find any jammed document there, open the document cover.
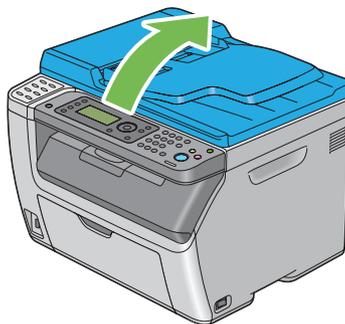
8. Remove the document from the ADF feed roller or the feed area by carefully pulling the document in the direction of the arrow shown in the following illustration.
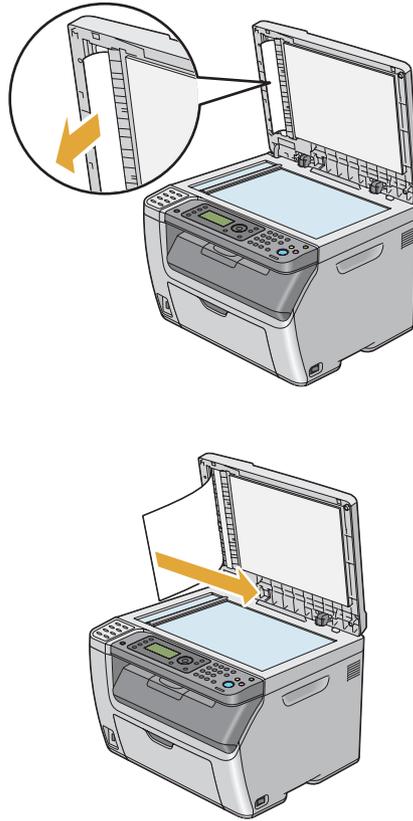
Clearing Paper Jams From the Front of the Printer

Note:
To resolve the error displayed on the LCD panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

1. Pull the PSI out.
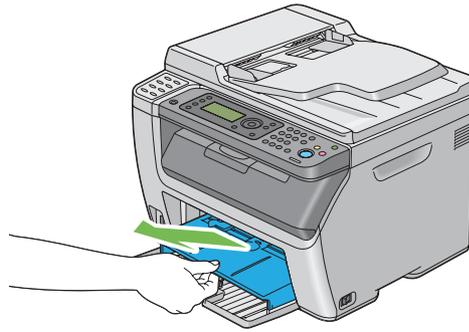
2. Remove any paper jammed from the front of the printer.
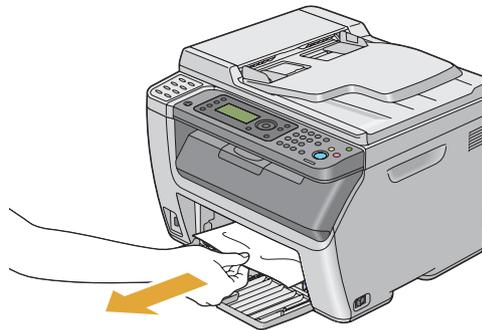
3. Replace the PSI in the printer.
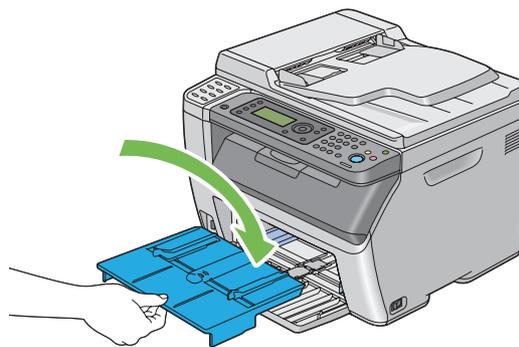
Important:
Do not use excessive force on the PSI. Doing so could damage it or the inside of the printer.

Clearing Paper Jams From the Back of the Printer

Important:

❏ *To prevent electric shock, always turn off the printer and disconnect the power cord from the grounded outlet before performing maintenance.*

❏ *To avoid burns, do not clear paper jams immediately after printing. The fusing unit becomes extremely hot during use.*

Note:

To resolve the error displayed on the LCD panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

1. Push the rear cover handle and open the rear cover.
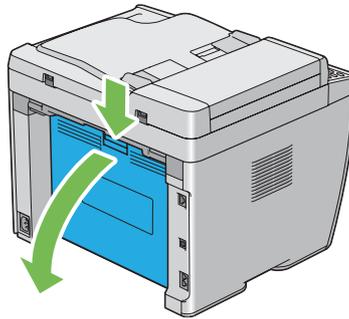
2. Lift up the levers.
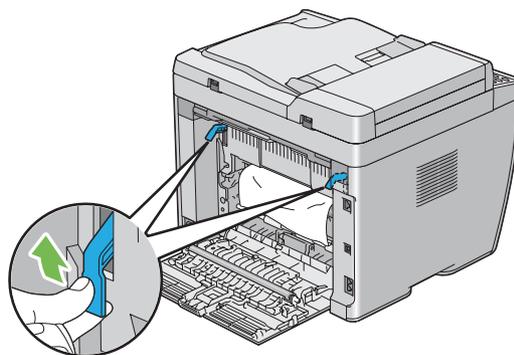
3. Remove any paper jammed from the back of the printer.
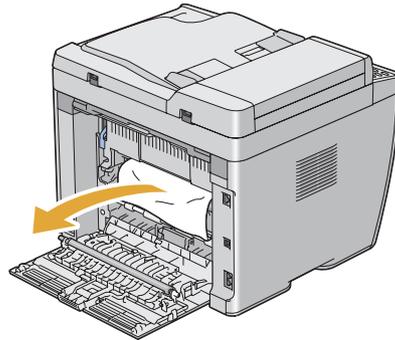
4. Lower the levers to their original position.
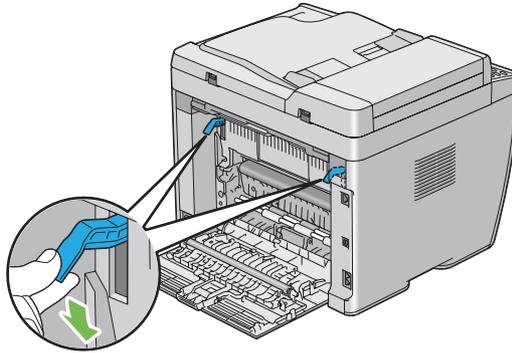
5. Close the rear cover.
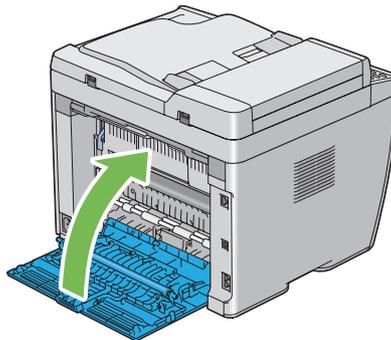
Clearing Paper Jams From the Center Output Tray

Important:
❏ *To prevent electric shock, always turn off the printer and disconnect the power cord from the grounded outlet before performing maintenance.*

❏ *To avoid burns, do not clear paper jams immediately after printing. The fusing unit becomes extremely hot during use.*

Note:
To resolve the error displayed on the LCD panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

1. Push the rear cover handle and open the rear cover.
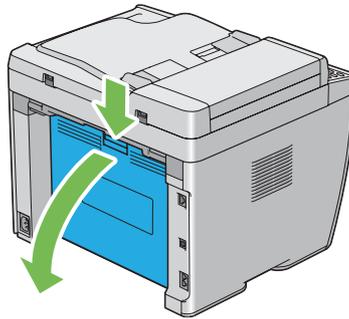
2. Lift up the levers.
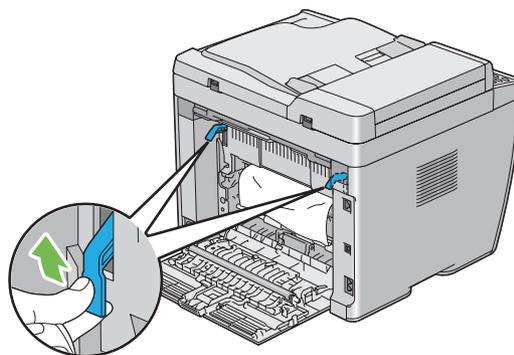
3. Remove any paper jammed from the back of the printer. If no paper is found in the paper path, face the front of the printer and check the center output tray.
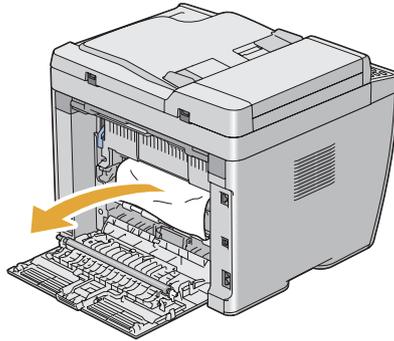
4. Lift and open the scanner.
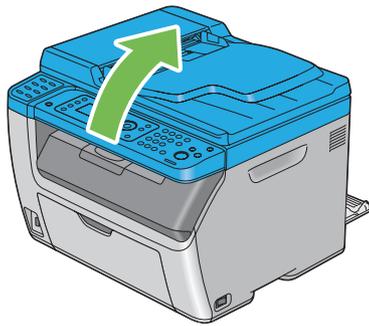
5. Remove any paper jammed out of the center output tray.

6. Lower and close the scanner.
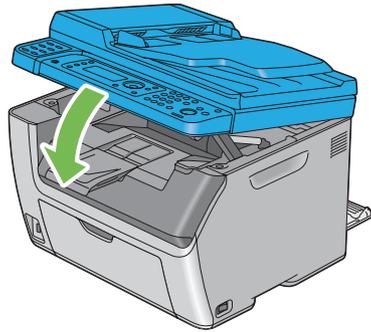
7. Lower the levers to their original position.
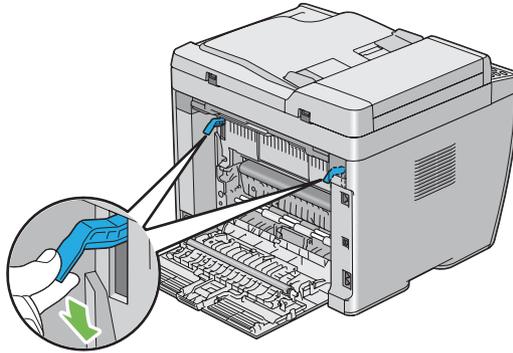
8. Close the rear cover.
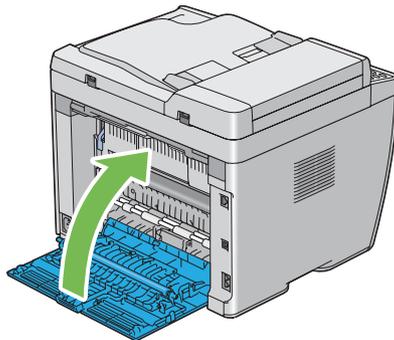
Jam Problems

Misfeed jam

Problem	Action
Print media misfeeds occur.	Remove the paper from the PSI, and then ensure that the paper is properly inserted in the MPF.
	Depending on the print media you use, take any of the following actions: ❏ For thick paper, use the one that is 163 gsm or less. ❏ For thin paper, use the one that is 60 gsm or more. ❏ For the envelope, ensure that it is properly loaded in the MPF or the PSI as instructed in "Loading Envelope in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 124 or in "Loading Envelope in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 129.
	If the envelope is deformed, correct it or use another envelope.
	If performing manual duplex printing, ensure that the print media is not curled.
	Fan the print media.
	If the print media is damp, turn over the print media. If the problem continues, use print media that is not damp.

Note:
If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorised dealer.

Multi-feed jam

Problem	Action
Print media multiple feeds occur.	Remove the paper from the PSI, and then ensure that the paper is inserted properly in the MPF.
	If the print media is damp, use print media that is not damp.
	Fan the print media.
(Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF only) A document jam occurs in the ADF if scanning of multiple-sheet document is cancelled while scanning is in progress.	Clear the jam. **See Also:** "Clearing Paper Jams From the ADF (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)" on page 303

Note:
If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorised dealer.

Basic Printer Problems

Some printer problems can be easy to resolve. If a problem occurs with your printer, check each of the following:

❏ The power cord is connected to the printer, and to a properly grounded electrical outlet.

❏ The printer is turned on.

❏ The electrical outlet is not turned off at any switch or breaker.

❏ Other electrical equipment plugged into the outlet is working.

❏ For the Epson AcuLaser CX17WF, when connected to the computer with the Wireless connection, the Ethernet cable is not connected between the printer and the network.

If you have checked all of the above and still have a problem, turn off the printer, wait for 10 seconds, and then turn on the printer. This often fixes the problem.

Display Problems

Problem	Action
After the printer is turned on, the display on the LCD panel is blank, keeps showing the Epson logo, or the back light is not lit.	Turn off the printer, wait for 10 seconds, and turn on the printer. Self Test Message appears on the LCD panel. When the test is completed, the `Select Function` screen is displayed.
Menu settings changed from the operator panel have no effect.	Settings in the print driver, or the printer utilities have precedence over the settings made on the operator panel. Change the menu settings from the print driver or the printer utilities instead of the operator panel.

Printing Problems

Problem	Action
Job did not print or incorrect characters printed.	Ensure that the `Select Function` screen appears on the LCD panel before you send a job to print.
	Ensure that print media is loaded in the printer.
	Verify that you are using the correct print driver.
	Ensure that you are using the correct Ethernet or USB cable and that it is securely connected to the printer. (Ethernet connection is available only on the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF.)
	Verify that the correct print media size is selected.
	If you are using a print spooler, verify that the spooler has not stalled.
	For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF, check the interface of your printer from `Admin Menu`. Determine the host interface you are using. Print a System Settings page to verify that the current interface settings are correct. Refer to "Printing a System Settings Page" on page 149 for details on how to print a System Settings page.

Problem	Action
Print media misfeeds or multiple feeds occur.	Ensure that the print media you are using meets the specifications for your printer. **See Also:** "Usable Print Media" on page 116
	Fan the print media before loading it.
	Ensure that the print media is loaded correctly.
	Ensure that the paper width guides and length guide are adjusted correctly.
	Ensure that the PSI is securely inserted.
	Do not overfill the print media sources.
	Do not force print media into the PSI or the MPF when you load it. Otherwise, it may skew or buckle.
	Ensure that the print media is not curled.
	Load the recommended print side correctly for the type of print media you are using. **See Also:** "Loading Print Media" on page 118
	Turn the print media over or around and try printing again to see if feeding improves.
	Do not mix print media types.
	Do not mix print media sizes.
	Remove the top and bottom curled sheets of a ream before loading the print media.
	Load a print media source only when it is empty.
The envelope is creased after printing.	Ensure that the envelope is loaded as instructed in "Loading Envelope in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 124 or "Loading Envelope in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 129.
Page breaks in unexpected places.	Increase the value for **Job Time-Out** in the **System Settings** menu, that is on the **Printer Maintenance** tab in the Printer Setting Utility.
	For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF, increase the time-out value in the **Protocol Settings** menu on EpsonNet Config.
Print media does not stack neatly in the center output tray.	Turn the print media stack over in the PSI and MPF.
Printer does not duplex pages.	Select **Flip on Short Edge** or **Flip on Long Edge** from the **Duplex** menu on the **Paper/Output** tab in the print driver.

Print Quality Problems

Note:
In this section, some procedures use the Printer Setting Utility or Status Monitor. Some procedures that use the Printer Setting Utility can also be performed using the operator panel.

See Also:
❏ *"Understanding the Printer Menus" on page 250*

❏ *"Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)" on page 36*

❏ *"Status Monitor (Windows Only)" on page 37*

The Output Is Too Light

Problem	Action
The output is too light.	The toner cartridges may be low or need to be replaced. Confirm the amount of toner in each toner cartridge. 1. Check the toner level in the **Consumables** tab in the **Printer Status** window of the Status Monitor. 2. Replace the toner cartridges as necessary.
	Verify that the print media is dry and the correct print media is used. If not, use the print media recommended for the printer. **See Also:** "Usable Print Media" on page 116
	Try changing the **Paper Type** setting in the print driver. 1. On the **Paper/Output** tab in **Printing Preferences** of the print driver, change the **Paper Type** setting.
	Disable **Toner Saving Mode** in the print driver. 1. On the **Graphics** tab in **Printing Preferences** of the print driver, ensure that the **Toner Saving Mode** check box is not selected.
	Adjust the transfer bias. 1. Launch the Printer Setting Utility, click **Adjust BTR** on the **Printer Maintenance** tab. 2. Adjust the setting for the type of print media being used. 3. Click the **Apply New Settings** button.
	If you use non-recommended print media, use the print media recommended for the printer.

Note:
If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorised dealer.
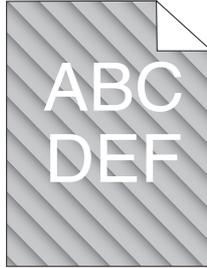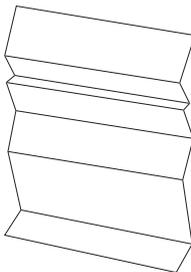
Toner Smears or Print Comes Off/Stain on Back Side

ABC
DEF

Problem	Action
Toner smears or print comes off. The output has stain on the back side.	The print media surface may be uneven. Try changing the **Paper Type** setting in the print driver. For example, change Plain to Lightweight Cardstock. 1. On the **Paper/Output** tab in **Printing Preferences** of the print driver, change the **Paper Type** setting.
	Verify that the correct print media is being used. If not, use the print media recommended for the printer. **See Also:** "Usable Print Media" on page 116
	Adjust the temperature of the fusing unit. 1. Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click **Adjust Fusing Unit** on the **Printer Maintenance** tab. 2. Adjust the fixing temperature by turning up the value for your printing media. 3. Click the **Apply New Settings** button.

Note:
If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorised dealer.

Random Spots/Blurred Images

ABC
DEF
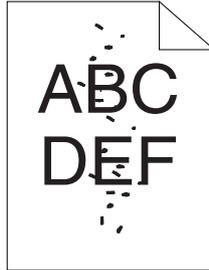
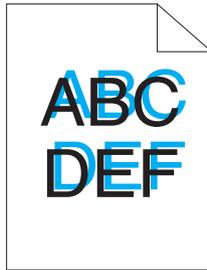| Problem	Action
The printed result has random spots or is blurred.	Ensure that the toner cartridges are installed correctly. **See Also:** "Installing a Toner Cartridge" on page 366
	If you use non-genuine brand toner cartridges, install genuine brand toner cartridges.
	Clean up the fusing unit. 1. Load one sheet of paper on the MPF, and then print a solid image all over paper. 2. Load the printed sheet with the side to be printed on facing down, and then print a blank sheet of paper.

Note:
If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorised dealer.

The Entire Output Is Blank
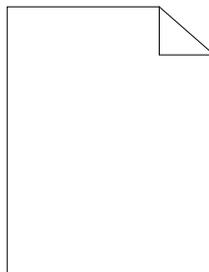
If this trouble happens, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorised dealer.

Streaks Appear on the Output
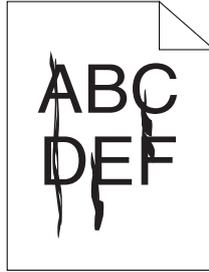
If this trouble happens, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorised dealer.

Pitched Color Dots
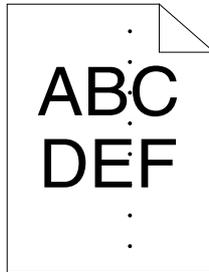
If this trouble happens, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorised dealer.

Vertical Blanks

Problem	Action
The printed result has vertical blanks.	Clean inside the printer and perform test print. 1. Clean inside the printer by using the print head cleaning rod. 2. Click **Print Test Page** in the **Properties** window of the print driver. **See Also:** "Cleaning Inside the Printer" on page 358

Note:
If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorised dealer.

Mottle

Problem	Action
The printed result has mottled appearance.	Adjust the transfer bias. 1. Launch the Printer Setting Utility, click **Adjust BTR** on the **Printer Maintenance** tab. 2. Adjust the setting for the type of print media being used. 3. Click the **Apply New Settings** button.
	If you use non-recommended print media, use the print media recommended for the printer.

Note:
If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorised dealer.

Ghosting

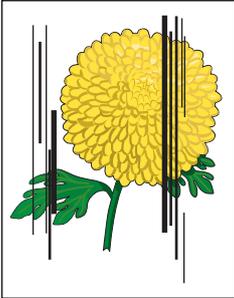| Problem	Action
The printed result has ghosting.	Adjust the transfer bias. 1. Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab. 2. Click the **Ghost Configuration Chart** button. The Ghost Configuration Chart is printed. 3. Click **BTR Refresh Mode** on the **Printer Maintenance** tab. 4. Select the check box next to **On**, and then click the **Apply New Settings** button. 5. Click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab. 6. Click the **Ghost Configuration Chart** button. The Ghost Configuration Chart is printed.
	The print media surface may be uneven. Try changing the **Paper Type** setting in the print driver. For example, change Plain to Lightweight Cardstock. 1. On the **Paper/Output** tab in **Printing Preferences** of the print driver, change the **Paper Type** setting.
	Adjust the temperature of the fusing unit. 1. Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click **Adjust Fusing Unit** on the **Printer Maintenance** tab. 2. Adjust the fixing temperature by turning up the value for your printing media. 3. Click the **Apply New Settings** button.
	If you use non-recommended print media, use the print media recommended for the printer.

Note:
If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorised dealer.

Fog

Problem	Action
The printed result is foggy.	When the whole is printed light, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorised dealer.
	When the printed page is partly light, start **Clean Developer**. 1. Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click **Clean Developer** on the **Diagnosis** tab. 2. Click the **Start** button.

Note:
If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorised dealer.

Bead-Carry-Out (BCO)

Problem	Action
Bead-Carry-Out (BCO) is happening.	If the printer is installed in a high altitude location, set the altitude of the location. 1. Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click **Adjust Altitude** on the **Printer Maintenance** tab. 2. Select the value close to the altitude of the location where the printer is installed. 3. Click the **Apply New Settings** button.

Note:
If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorised dealer.

Auger Mark

Problem	Action
The printed result has auger mark.	The toner cartridges may be low or need to be replaced. Confirm the amount of toner in each toner cartridge.
	1. Check the toner level in the **Consumables** tab in the **Printer Status** window of the Status Monitor.
	2. Replace the toner cartridges as necessary.
	Start **Clean Developer**.
	1. Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click **Clean Developer** on the **Diagnosis** tab.
	2. Click the **Start** button.

Note:
If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorised dealer.

Wrinkled/Stained Paper

Problem	Action
The output is wrinkled. The output is stained.	Verify that the correct print media is being used. If not, use the print media recommended for the printer. If excessive wrinkles occur, use paper or other media from a new package. **See Also:** ❏ "Usable Print Media" on page 116 ❏ "About Print Media" on page 113
	If you use the envelope, check whether the crease is within 30 mm of the four edges of the envelope. If the crease is within 30 mm of the four edges of the envelope, this is considered normal. Your printer is not at fault. If not, take the following actions: ❏ If the envelope is Com 10, which is 220 mm or longer and has a flap on the long edge, use a different size envelope. ❏ If the envelope is C5, which is 220 mm or longer and has a flap on the short edge, load it in the MPF with the flap open and facing up. ❏ If the envelope is Monarch or DL, which is shorter than 220 mm, load it long edge feed in the MPF with the flap open and facing up. If the problem continues, use a different size envelope.

Note:
If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorised dealer.

The Top Margin Is Incorrect

ABC
DEF
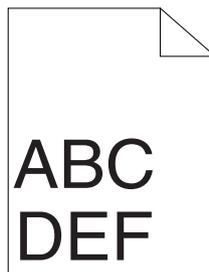
Problem	Action
The top margin is incorrect.	Ensure that the margins are set correctly on the application being used.

Note:
If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorised dealer.

Color Registration Is out of Alignment

Problem	Action
Color registration is out of alignment.	Execute auto color registration adjustment. 1. Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click **Registration Adjustment** on the **Printer Maintenance** tab. 2. Deselect the check box next to **On**. 3. Click the **Start** button next to **Auto Correct**.
	Clean the CTD sensor. 1. Clean the CTD sensor. 2. Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click **Registration Adjustment** on the **Printer Maintenance** tab. 3. Deselect the check box next to **On**. 4. Click the **Start** button next to **Auto Correct**. **See Also:** "Cleaning the Color Toner Density (CTD) Sensor" on page 361
	Print the color registration chart and manually correct the color registration. 1. Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click **Registration Adjustment** on the **Printer Maintenance** tab. 2. Deselect the check box next to **On**. 3. Click the **Start** button next to **Print Color Regi Chart**. The color registration chart is printed. 4. Check the values with the straight lines on the chart. 5. Select the value for each color on the Printer Setting Utility. 6. Click the **Apply New Settings** button. 7. Click the **Start** button next to **Print Color Regi Chart** to print the color registration chart again. 8. Adjust till all straight lines are at the value of 0. **See Also:** "Adjusting Color Registration" on page 331

Note:
If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorised dealer.

Protrudent/Bumpy Paper

ABC
DEF.
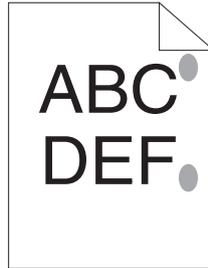
Problem	Action
Printed surface got protrudent/bumpy.	Clean up the fusing unit. 1. Load one sheet of paper on the MPF, and then print a solid image all over paper. 2. Load the printed sheet with the side to be printed on facing down, and then print a blank sheet of paper.

Note:
If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorised dealer.

Copy Problem

Problem	Action
(Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF only) A document loaded in the ADF cannot be copied.	Ensure that the ADF cover is firmly closed.

Copy Quality Problems

Problem	Action
(Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF only) There are lines or streaks in copies made from the ADF.	There is debris on the ADF glass. When scanning, the paper from the ADF passes over the debris creating lines or streaks. Clean the ADF glass with a lint free cloth. **See Also:** "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 355
There are spots in copies taken from the document glass.	There is debris on the document glass. When scanning, the debris creates a spot on the image. Clean the document glass with a lint free cloth. **See Also:** "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 355
The reverse side of the original is showing on the copy.	On the Copy menu, enable `Auto Exposure`. For information on turning `Auto Exposure` on and off, see "Auto Exposure" on page 169.
Light colors are washed out or white on the copy.	On the Copy menu, disable `Auto Exposure`. For information on turning `Auto Exposure` on and off, see "Auto Exposure" on page 169.
Image is too light or dark.	Use the `Lighten/Darken` option on the Copy menu. For information on making the image lighter or darker, see "Lighten/Darken" on page 167.

Note:
If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorised dealer.

Adjusting Color Registration

This section describes how to adjust the color registration when you first install the printer or after moving it to a new location.

Performing Auto Correct

Auto Correct allows you to correct the color registration automatically.

The Operator Panel

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Admin Menu, and then press the (ok) button.

3. Select Maintenance, and then press the (ok) button.

4. Select Adjust ColorRegi, and then press the (ok) button.

5. Select Auto Adjust, and then press the (ok) button.

6. Select Yes, and then press the (ok) button.

    Auto Correct is performed.

The Printer Setting Utility

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

1. Click **start** — **All Programs** — **EPSON** — your printer — **Printer Setting Utility**.

    Note:
    *The window to select a printer appears in this step, when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.*

    The Printer Setting Utility opens.

2. Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.

3. Select **Registration Adjustment** from the list at the left side of the page.

The **Registration Adjustment** page is displayed.

4. Deselect the check box next to **On**.

5. Click the **Start** button next to **Auto Correct**.

    The color registration is corrected automatically.

Printing the Color Registration Chart

The Printer Setting Utility

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

1. Click **start** — **All Programs** — **EPSON** — your printer — **Printer Setting Utility**.

    Note:
    The window to select a printer appears in this step, when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.

    The Printer Setting Utility opens.

2. Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.

3. Select **Registration Adjustment** from the list at the left side of the page.

    The **Registration Adjustment** page is displayed.

4. Deselect the check box next to **On**.

5. Click the **Start** button next to **Print Color Regi Chart**.

    The color registration chart is printed.

Determining Values

On the color registration chart printed, find the straightest lines where the two black lines and the colored line are most closely aligned for each color (Y, M, and C).

If you find the straightest line, make a note of the value (-5 – +5) indicated by the straightest line for each color.

When the value is 0 for each color, you do not need to adjust the color registration.

When the value is not 0, enter the value according to the procedure in "Entering Values" on page 333.
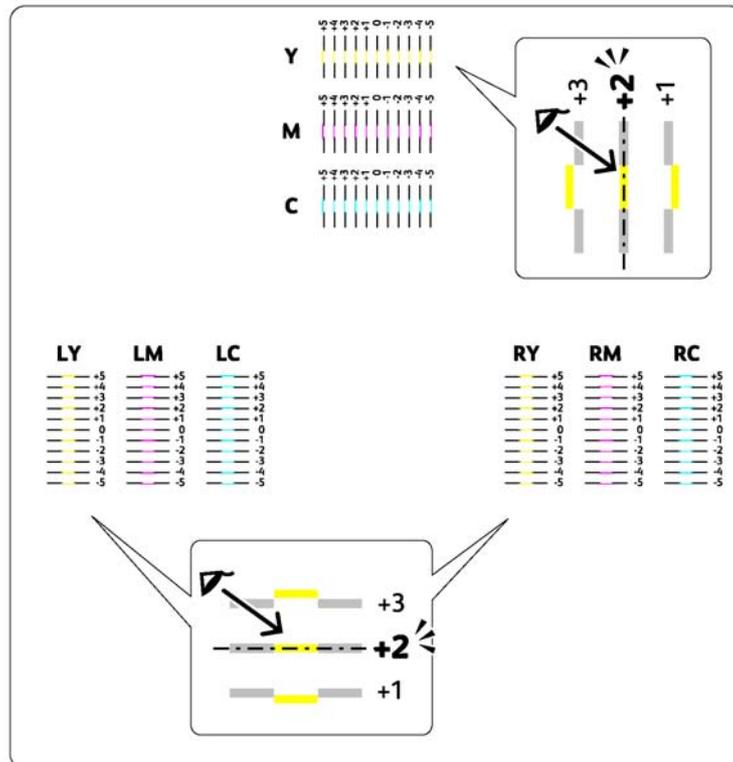
Entering Values

The Printer Setting Utility

Using the Printer Setting Utility, enter the values that you found in the color registration chart to make adjustments.

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

1. Click **start** — **All Programs** — **EPSON** — your printer — **Printer Setting Utility**.

Note:
The window to select a printer appears in this step, when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name***.*

The Printer Setting Utility opens.

2. Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.

3. Select **Registration Adjustment** from the list at the left side of the page.

   The **Registration Adjustment** page is displayed.

4. Deselect the check box next to **On**.

5. Select the value you checked in the color registration chart, and then click the **Apply New Settings** button.

6. Click the **Start** button next to **Print Color Regi Chart**.

   The color registration chart is printed with the new values.

7. Adjust until all straight lines are at the value of 0. Show image of before and after adjustment will help.

Important:
❏ *After printing the color registration chart, do not turn off the printer until the printer motor has stopped running.*

❏ *If 0 is not next to the straightest lines, determine the values and adjust the printer again.*

Fax Problems (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)

Problem	Action
The printer is not working, there is no display and the buttons are not working.	Unplug the power cord and plug it in again.
	Ensure that there is power to the electrical receptacle.

Problem	Action
No dial tone sounds.	Check that the phone line is connected properly. **See Also:** "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 214
	Check that the phone socket in the wall is working by plugging in another phone.
The numbers stored in the memory do not dial correctly.	Ensure that the numbers are stored in the memory correctly. Print the Address Book List.
The document does not feed into the printer.	Ensure that the document is not wrinkled and you are putting it in correctly. Check that the document is of the right size, not too thick or thin.
	Ensure that the ADF cover is firmly closed.
Faxes are not received automatically.	Select FAX Mode for Ans Select.
	Ensure that there is paper in the PSI or the MPF.
	Check if the LCD panel shows Memory Full.
The printer does not send faxes.	Check the other fax machine you are sending to, to see if it can receive your fax.
The incoming fax has blank spaces or is received in poor-quality.	The fax machine sending you the fax may be faulty. Ask the sender to sort out the problem and resend the fax.
	A noisy phone line can cause line errors. Ask the sender to resend the fax.
	Check your printer by making a copy.
	The toner cartridge may be empty. Replace the toner cartridge. **See Also:** "Replacing Toner Cartridges" on page 363
Some of the words on an incoming fax are stretched.	The fax machine sending you the fax had a temporary document jam. Ask the sender to clear the document jam and resend the fax.
There are lines on the documents you send.	Check your ADF glass for marks and clean it. **See Also:** "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 355
The printer dials a number, but the connection with another fax machine fails.	The other fax machine may be turned off, out of paper, or cannot answer incoming calls. Ask the sender to sort out the problem and retry.
Documents are not stored in the memory.	There may not be enough memory to store the document. If the LCD panel shows Memory Full, delete any documents you no longer need from the memory and then restore the document, or wait for the job in progress (e.g., a fax transmission or reception) to complete.

Problem	Action
Blank areas appear at the bottom of each page or on other pages, with a small strip of text at the top.	You may have chosen the wrong paper settings in the user option setting. Correct the paper settings. **See Also:** "Tray Settings" on page 292
The printer will not send or receive faxes.	Ensure that the region is set correctly. 1. Press the **System** button. 2. Select Admin Menu, and then press the (ok) button. 3. Select Fax Settings, and then press the (ok) button. 4. Select Region, and then press the (ok) button. 5. When the setting is correct, press the ᒣ (**Back**) button to return to the previous screen. To change the setting, select the correct region and then press the (ok) button. Select Yes to reboot the printer.
	Check that the phone line is connected properly. **See Also:** "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 214
An error often occurs during a fax transmission or reception.	Reduce the modem speed. 1. Press the **System** button. 2. Select Admin Menu, and then press the (ok) button. 3. Select Fax Settings, and then press the (ok) button. 4. Select Modem Speed, and then press the (ok) button. 5. Select the desired menu item, and then press the (ok) button.

Scanning Problems

Problem	Action
The scanner does not work.	Ensure that you place the document to be scanned face down on the document glass, or face up in the ADF. (ADF is available only on the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF.)
	There may not be enough available memory to hold the document you want to scan. Try the Preview function to see if that works. Try lowering the scan resolution rate.
	Check that the USB cable is connected properly.
	Ensure that the USB cable is not defective. Switch the cable with a known good cable. If necessary, replace the cable.
	Check that the scanner is configured correctly. Check the application you want to use to make certain that the scanner job is being sent to the correct port.
The printer scans very slowly.	For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF, graphics are scanned more slowly than text when using the Scan to E-Mail or Scan to Network feature.
	Communication speed becomes slow in scan mode because of the large amount of memory required to analyze and reproduce the scanned image.
	Scanning images at a high resolution takes more time than scanning at a low resolution.
(Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF only) Document misfeeds or multiple feeds occur in the ADF.	Ensure that the document's paper type meets the specifications for the printer. **See Also:** ❏ "Preparing a Document" on page 156 ❏ "Making Copies From the ADF (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)" on page 159
	Check whether the document is properly loaded in the ADF.
	Ensure that the document guides are adjusted properly.
	Ensure that the number of document sheets do not exceed the maximum capacity of the ADF.
	Ensure that the document is not curled.
	Fan the document well before loading it in the ADF.
(Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF only) Vertical stripes appear on the output when scanned using the ADF.	Clean the ADF glass. **See Also:** "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 355

Problem	Action
A smear appears at the same location on the output when scanned using the document glass.	Clean the document glass. **See Also:** "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 355
Images are skewed.	Ensure that the document is loaded straight in the ADF or on the document glass. (ADF is available only on the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF.)
(Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF only) Diagonal lines appear jagged when scanned using the ADF.	If the document uses thick media, try scanning it from the document glass.
(Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF only) The printer does not properly transfer scan data to a specified destination via the Scan to E-Mail or Scan to Network feature.	Check if the following settings have been set correctly on the EpsonNet Config. **Scan to E-Mail** Check the following setting under **Address Book** — **Personal Address**: ❏ **Address** **Scan to Network** Check the following settings under **Address Book** — **Computer/Server Address Book**: ❏ **Name (Displayed on Printer)** ❏ **Network Type** ❏ **Host Address (IP Address or DNS Name)** ❏ **Port Number** ❏ **Login Name (if required by host)** ❏ **Login Password** ❏ **Name of Shared Directory** ❏ **Subdirectory Path (optional)**
Cannot scan using WIA on a Windows Server® 2003 computer.	Enable WIA on the computer. To enable WIA: 1. Click **Start**, point to **Administrative Tools**, and then click **Services**. 2. Right-click **Windows Image Acquisition (WIA)**, and then click **Properties** to ensure that **Startup type** is set to **Manual** or **Automatic**. 3. Click **OK**. 4. Right-click **Windows Image Acquisition (WIA)**, and then click **Start**.

Problem	Action
Cannot scan using TWAIN or WIA on a Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2 computer.	Install the Desktop Experience feature on the computer. To install Desktop Experience: 1. Click **Start**, point to **Administrative Tools**, and then click **Server Manager**. 2. Under **Features Summary**, click **Add Features**. 3. Select the **Desktop Experience** check box. 4. If a window appears, follow the on-screen instructions. 5. Click **Next**, and then click **Install**. 6. Restart the computer.

Scan Driver/Printer Utility Problems

Problem	Action
(Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF only) Unable to retrieve the Address Book data from the printer on the Address Book Editor.	Ensure that your computer and the printer is properly connected with the USB cable or Ethernet cable.
	Ensure that the printer is turned on.
	Ensure that the print driver is installed on your computer. (The Address Book Editor retrieves the Address Book data via the print driver.)
The TWAIN driver cannot connect to the printer.	Ensure that your computer and the printer is properly connected with the USB cable.
	Check whether the printer is turned on. If the printer is turned on, reboot it by turning the power switch off and then on again.
	If a scan application is running, close the application once, restart the application, and then try scanning again.
The scan driver has not been registered on your computer and cannot be accessed from the Express Scan Manager.	Install the scan driver. If the driver is already installed, uninstall it and then reinstall it.
Failed to scan your document on the printer via the Express Scan Manager.	Ensure that your computer and the printer is properly connected with the USB cable.
	Check whether the printer is turned on. If the printer is turned on, reboot it by turning the power switch off and then on again.
	If a scan application is running, close the application once, restart the application, and then try scanning again.

Problem	Action
Failed to create an image file via the Express Scan Manager.	Ensure that there is sufficient space in your hard disk.
	Uninstall the Express Scan Manager on your computer and then reinstall it.
Failed to initialize the Express Scan Manager.	Uninstall the Express Scan Manager on your computer and then reinstall it.
Failed to execute the Express Scan Manager.	Uninstall the Express Scan Manager on your computer and then reinstall it.
An unexpected error occurred on the Express Scan Manager.	Uninstall the Express Scan Manager on your computer and then reinstall it.

Other Problems

Problem	Action
Condensation has occurred inside the printer.	This usually occurs within several hours after you heat the room in winter. This also occurs when the printer is operating in a location where relative humidity reaches 85% or more. Adjust the humidity or relocate the printer to an appropriate environment.
No file is displayed on the LCD panel when you are selecting a file for Print From USB Memory feature.	Confirm that there are files with the supported file formats (PDF, TIFF, or JPEG) in the USB storage device.
	If the target file is in a deep hierarchy in the USB storage device, move the file to the root directory in the USB storage device with your computer.
	Shorten the target file name in the USB storage device with your computer, and try printing again.

Understanding Printer Messages

The printer LCD panel displays messages describing the current state of the printer and indicates possible printer problems you must resolve. This section describes error codes included in the messages, their meanings, and how to clear the messages.

Important:
When an error message is displayed, the print data remaining on the printer and the information accumulated in the memory of the printer are not secured.

Error Code	What You Can Do
005-121	Open the ADF cover. Remove the jammed paper and then close the ADF cover.
005-301	**See Also:** "Clearing Paper Jams From the ADF (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF Only)" on page 303
009-950	Replace the specified toner cartridge.
009-951	**See Also:** "Replacing Toner Cartridges" on page 363
009-952	
009-953	
010-397	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorised dealer.
016-315	**See Also:** "Contacting Epson Support" on page 377
016-317	
016-372	
016-501	
016-502	
016-503	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. Check if the SMTP server setting is correct by contacting your server administrator.
016-504	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. Check if the user name and password for the POP3 server are set correctly by contacting your server administrator.
016-506	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. Check if the SMTP server address and e-mail destination are set correctly.
016-507	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. Check if the user name and password used for the SMTP server are set correctly by contacting your server administrator.
016-718	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. Retry when the printer does not process any job.
016-719	Press the ⊙ button to cancel the current job. Retry when the printer does not process any job.
016-720	
016-744	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorised dealer.
016-745	**See Also:** "Contacting Epson Support" on page 377
016-749	Press the ⊙ button to cancel the current job. Retry when the printer does not process any job.
016-764	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. Check if the Ethernet cable is properly connected. If this does not solve the problem, contact SMTP server administrator.

Error Code	What You Can Do
016-766	Press the ⓞ button to clear the message. Ping the IP address of the SMTP server and check if the server is available. If this does not solve the problem, contact SMTP server administrator.
016-767	Press the ⓞ button to clear the message. Check if the recipient address is correct, and try scanning again.
016-791	Insert the USB memory device and press the ⓞ button to clear the message.
016-795	Press the ⓞ button to clear the message. Check if the file format of the data in the USB memory device is the supported one.
016-797	Press the ⓞ button to clear the message. Check if the selected file in the USB memory device is valid.
016-920	Press the ⓞ button to clear the message. Check the wireless setting for the access point and the printer.
016-930	Remove the device from the front USB port and press the ⓞ button to clear the message.
016-931	
016-981	Press the ⓞ button to cancel the current job. Try copying fewer documents.
016-985	Attached file size is larger than you defined. Press the ⓞ button to clear the message. Try the following: ❏ Enlarge `Max E-Mail Size`. ❏ Lower the resolution setting. ❏ Change the file format of the scanned image.
017-970	Memory is likely to be full. Press the ⓞ button to clear the message. Try the following: ❏ Delete the data stored in the memory. ❏ Lower the resolution setting. ❏ Reduce the number of pages.
017-980	Press the ⓞ button to clear the message. Retry when the printer does not process any job.
017-981	
017-988	Press the ⓞ button to clear the message. Check if the interface cable is securely connected or your computer does not have any problem.
018-338	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorised dealer. **See Also:** "Contacting Epson Support" on page 377
024-340	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorised dealer. **See Also:** "Contacting Epson Support" on page 377
024-360	
024-371	

Error Code	What You Can Do
024-958	Load the specified paper and press the Ⓚ button to clear the message. **See Also:** ❏ "Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 119 ❏ "Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 127
024-963	Press the Ⓚ button to clear the message and load the specified paper. Follow the on-screen instruction if one appears. **See Also:** ❏ "Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 119 ❏ "Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 127
026-720	Press the Ⓚ button to clear the message. Check if the USB memory device has enough memory.
026-721 026-722	Press the Ⓚ button to clear the message. Check if the USB memory device is write-protected or gets any disk problem.
026-723	Press the Ⓚ button to clear the message. Check if the path and file name to save the data is too long.
026-750	Press the Ⓚ button to clear the message. Check if the interface cable is securely connected, or restart the application you use.
026-751 026-752	Press the Ⓚ button to clear the message. Check if the interface cable is securely connected.
027-446 027-452	Change IP address to avoid duplication. Turn off the printer, and turn it on again.
031-521	Press the Ⓚ button to clear the message. Check if the access setting to the SMB server is correct by contacting your server administrator.
031-526	Press the Ⓚ button to clear the message. Check if the domain name of the SMB server is correct. Check DNS connection, or check if the name of the forwarding destination server is registered with DNS.
031-529	Press the Ⓚ button to clear the message. Check if the Ethernet cable is properly connected and if the password for the SMB server is correct.
031-530	Press the Ⓚ button to clear the message. Check if the working path setting to the SMB server is correct.
031-533	Press the Ⓚ button to clear the message. Check the following: ❏ If the file name you specified is not used by other users. ❏ If file or folder that has the same name as the one you specified already exists. ❏ If the SMB server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.

Error Code	What You Can Do
031-534	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. Check if the SMB server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.
031-535	
031-536	
031-537	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. Check if the storage location has free space.
031-555	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. Check if the network is properly connected.
031-556	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. Check if the SMB server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.
031-557	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. Check the following: ❏ If the file name you specified is not used by other users. ❏ If file or folder that has the same name as the one you specified already exists.
031-558	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. Check if the access setting to the SMB server is correct by contacting your server administrator.
031-571	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. Check if the Ethernet cable is properly connected.
031-574	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. Check if the domain name of the FTP server is correct.
031-575	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. Check if the host name setting to the FTP server is correct.
031-576	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. Check if the FTP server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.
031-578	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. Check if the Ethernet cable is properly connected and if login name (user name) and password for the FTP server are correct.
031-579	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. Check if the working path setting to the FTP server is correct.
031-582	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. Check if the FTP server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.
031-584	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. Check the following: ❏ If the file name you specified is not used by other users. ❏ If file or folder that has the same name as the one you specified already exists. ❏ If the FTP server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.
031-585	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. Check if the FTP server encounters any delete/write-protection or disk problem.
031-587	
031-588	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. Check if the FTP server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.
031-589	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. Check if the storage location has free space.

Error Code	What You Can Do
031-594	Press the ⊛ button to clear the message. Contact your server administrator to check if the scanned file has wrong setting while being stored to FTP server. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorised dealer. **See Also:** "Contacting Epson Support" on page 377
031-598	Press the ⊛ button to clear the message. Check if the FTP server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.
033-503 033-513	Press the ⊛ button to clear the message. Check the report. Delete the unnecessary data stored in the memory.
033-517	Press the ⊛ button to clear the message. Check if the password of the fax lock is correct.
033-518	Press the ⊛ button to clear the message. Check if your region is set correctly.
033-519	Fax service is locked. To continue, press the ⊛ button and disable the fax lock. **See Also:** "Limiting Access to Printer Operations" on page 297
033-787	Press the ⊛ button to clear the message. The job is cancelled.
033-788	Press the ⊛ button to clear the message. Remove the received fax, or wait for a while until sending a fax is completed.
034-700 034-701 034-702	Press the ⊛ button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following: ❏ Check if the phone line is connected properly. ❏ Check if the destination number is correct. ❏ Set Number of Redial to the largest value. ❏ Set Interval Timer or Redial Delay longer. **See Also:** "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 214
034-703 034-704 034-705 034-706	Press the ⊛ button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following: ❏ Check if the phone line is connected properly. ❏ Check if the destination number is available and correct. ❏ Set Number of Redial to the largest value. ❏ Set Interval Timer or Redial Delay longer. **See Also:** "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 214

Error Code	What You Can Do
034-707	Press the 🆗 button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following: ❏ Set `Number of Redial` to the largest value. ❏ Set `Interval Timer` or `Redial Delay` longer. ❏ Lower `Modem Speed`.
034-708	Press the 🆗 button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following: ❏ Set `Number of Redial` to the largest value. ❏ Set `Interval Timer` or `Redial Delay` longer. ❏ Lower `Modem Speed`. ❏ Check if the destination number is available.
034-709 034-710	Press the 🆗 button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following: ❏ Set `Number of Redial` to the largest value. ❏ Set `Interval Timer` or `Redial Delay` longer.
034-711 034-712 034-713	Press the 🆗 button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following: ❏ Set `Number of Redial` to the largest value. ❏ Set `Interval Timer` or `Redial Delay` longer. ❏ Lower `Modem Speed`.
034-714	Press the 🆗 button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following: ❏ Set `Number of Redial` to the largest value. ❏ Set `Interval Timer` or `Redial Delay` longer. ❏ Check if the destination number is available.
034-715	Press the 🆗 button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following: ❏ Set `Number of Redial` to the largest value. ❏ Set `Interval Timer` or `Redial Delay` longer. ❏ Lower `Modem Speed`.
034-716	Press the 🆗 button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the retry for the specified number of times, it will be cancelled. When retrying sending the fax, lower `Modem Speed`.
034-717	Press the 🆗 button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the retry for the specified number of times, it will be cancelled. Retry sending the fax.

Error Code	What You Can Do
034-718 034-719	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the retry for the specified number of times, it will be cancelled. When retrying sending the fax, lower `Modem Speed`.
034-720	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the retry for the specified number of times, it will be cancelled. When retrying sending the fax, try the following: ❏ Lower `Modem Speed`. ❏ Enable `ECM`.
034-721 034-722 034-723 034-724 034-725 034-726	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the retry for the specified number of times, it will be cancelled. When retrying sending the fax, lower `Modem Speed`.
034-727	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. Check if the destination number is available. If the error continues to appear after the retry for the specified number of times, it will be cancelled.
034-750	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. Check if the phone line is connected properly. **See Also:** "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 214
034-751	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. Check if the destination machine blocks your fax as the junk fax. If it does, ask the receiver to disable the setting.
034-752 034-753	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. Check if the phone line is connected properly. **See Also:** "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 214
034-754 034-755 034-756 034-757	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. Lower `Modem Speed`.
034-758	Press the ⊙ button to clear the message. Check if the phone line is connected properly. Or, lower `Modem Speed`. **See Also:** "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 214

Error Code	What You Can Do
034-759	Press the (OK) button to clear the message. Lower `Modem Speed`.
034-760	
034-761	Press the (OK) button to clear the message. Check if the phone line is connected properly. **See Also:** "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 214
034-762	Press the (OK) button to clear the message. Try the following: ❑ Lower `Modem Speed`. ❑ Enable `ECM`.
034-763	Press the (OK) button to clear the message. Lower `Modem Speed`.
034-764	
034-765	
034-766	
034-767	Press the (OK) button to clear the message. Check if the phone line is connected properly. **See Also:** "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 214
034-768	Press the (OK) button to clear the message. Lower `Modem Speed`.
041-340	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorised dealer. **See Also:** "Contacting Epson Support" on page 377
042-358	
042-372	
061-370	
062-321	
062-360	
062-790	Press the (OK) button to clear the message. The scanned data is deleted. Retry scanning the document.
075-100	Check and clear the paper path, load the paper, and then press the (OK) button to clear the message. **See Also:** "Clearing Paper Jams From the Front of the Printer" on page 306
075-921	Load paper for the second side (odd) pages, and press the (OK) button. **See Also:** "Manual Duplex Printing (Windows Print Driver Only)" on page 132

Error Code	What You Can Do
077-100	Open the rear cover and remove the jammed paper.
077-104	**See Also:** "Clearing Paper Jams From the Back of the Printer" on page 308
077-106	
077-108	
077-109	
077-304	Close the rear cover.
077-900	Open the rear cover and remove the jammed paper. **See Also:** "Clearing Paper Jams From the Center Output Tray" on page 310
077-901	Open the rear cover and remove the jammed paper. **See Also:** "Clearing Paper Jams From the Back of the Printer" on page 308
092-310	Clean the CTD sensor. **See Also:** "Cleaning the Color Toner Density (CTD) Sensor" on page 361
092-651	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorised dealer. **See Also:** "Contacting Epson Support" on page 377
092-661	
092-910	Clean the CTD sensor. **See Also:** "Cleaning the Color Toner Density (CTD) Sensor" on page 361
093-423	Replace the specified toner cartridge soon. **See Also:** "Replacing Toner Cartridges" on page 363
093-424	
093-425	
093-426	
093-919	Re-install or replace the specified toner cartridge. **See Also:** "Replacing Toner Cartridges" on page 363
093-920	
093-921	
093-922	

Error Code	What You Can Do
093-930	Remove the specified toner cartridge and install a new one. If you do not replace the toner cartridge, print quality problems may occur.
093-931	**See Also:**
093-932	"Replacing Toner Cartridges" on page 363
093-933	
093-926	Replace the specified toner cartridge with the supported one.
093-960	**See Also:** "Replacing Toner Cartridges" on page 363
093-961	
093-962	
093-970	Re-install the specified toner cartridge.
093-971	**See Also:** "Installing a Toner Cartridge" on page 366
093-972	
093-973	

Error Code	What You Can Do
116-210	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorised dealer. **See Also:** "Contacting Epson Support" on page 377
116-314	
116-323	
116-325	
116-326	
116-335	
116-355	
116-395	
117-331	
117-332	
117-333	
117-334	
117-340	
117-342	
117-343	
117-344	
117-346	
117-348	Retry, and check the report. Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorised dealer. **See Also:** "Contacting Epson Support" on page 377

Error Code	What You Can Do
117-349	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Epson local representative office or an authorised dealer.
117-350	**See Also:**
117-351	"Contacting Epson Support" on page 377
117-366	
124-333	
134-211	
191-310	
193-700	This message indicates the printer is in the Non-Genuine Mode.

Note:
As for the following message, which does not include an error code, refer to the table below for the solution.

Error Message	What You Can Do
USB Memory Error Cannot Mount File System Remove from USB Port	Remove the USB memory device and check if it is usable. Press the ⓞⓚ button to clear the message.

Contacting Service

When you call for printer service, be prepared to describe the problem you are experiencing or the error message on the LCD panel.

You need to know the model of your printer and serial number. For the model name, see the label on the rear cover of your printer. For the serial number, see the label under the black toner cartridge installed in your printer.

Getting Help

Epson provides several automatic diagnostic tools to help you produce and maintain print quality.

LCD Panel Messages

The LCD panel provides you with information and troubleshooting help. When an error or warning condition occurs, the LCD panel displays a message informing you of the problem.

See Also:
"Understanding Printer Messages" on page 340

Status Monitor Alerts

The Status Monitor is a tool that is included on the *Software Disc*. It automatically checks the printer status when you send a print job. If the printer is unable to print your job, the Status Monitor automatically displays an alert on your computer screen to let you know that the printer needs attention.

Non-Genuine Mode

When toner within a toner cartridge is end of its service life, the `XXXX Cartridge is Close to Life` or `Replace XXXX Cartridge` (`XXXX`: `Yellow`, `Magenta`, `Cyan`, or `Black`) message appears.

When you want to use the printer in the Non-Genuine Mode, enable the Non-Genuine Mode and replace the toner cartridge.

Important:
If you use the printer in the Non-Genuine Mode, the performance of the printer may not be at its optimum. And any problems that may arise from the use of the Non-Genuine Mode are not covered by our quality guarantee. The continuous use of the Non-Genuine Mode can also cause the printer to break down, and any repair charges for such break down will be incurred by users.

Note:
To disable the Non-Genuine Mode, select `Off` *for* `Non-Genuine Mode` *on the operator panel or deselect the check box next to* **On** *on the* **Non-Genuine Mode** *page on the* **Printer Maintenance** *tab in the Printer Setting Utility.*

The Operator Panel

Note:
Before starting the operation described below, confirm that the Select Function *screen is displayed on the LCD panel.*

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Admin Menu and then press the ⊙ button.

3. Select Maintenance and then press the ⊙ button.

4. Select Non-Genuine Mode and then press the ⊙ button.

5. Select On and then press the ⊙ button.

6. Press the ◀ button until the top page is displayed.

    The printer switches to the Non-Genuine Mode.

The Printer Setting Utility

The following procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

1. Click **start** — **All Programs** — **EPSON** — your printer — **Printer Setting Utility**.

    Note:
    The window to select a printer appears in this step, when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.

    The Printer Setting Utility opens.

2. Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.

3. Select **Non-Genuine Mode** from the list at the left side of the page.

    The **Non-Genuine Mode** page is displayed.

4. Select the check box next to **On**, and then click the **Apply New Settings** button.

Chapter 11

Maintenance

Cleaning the Printer

This section describes how to clean the printer in order to maintain it in good condition and print clean printouts all the time.

> ⚠ **Warning:**
> *When cleaning this product, use the designated cleaning materials exclusive to it. Other cleaning materials may result in poor performance of the product. Never use aerosol cleaners, or it may catch fire and cause explosion.*

> ❗ **Caution:**
> *When cleaning this product, always switch off and unplug it. Access to a live machine interior may cause electric shock.*

Cleaning the Scanner

Keep the scanner clean to ensure the best possible copies. Clean the scanner at the start of each day and during the day, as needed.

1. Slightly dampen a soft lint-free cloth or paper towel with water.

2. Open the document cover.
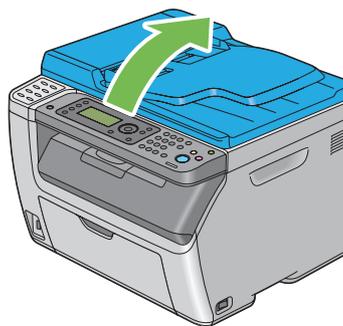
3. For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17WF, wipe the surface of the document glass and ADF glass until they are clean and dry.

   For the Epson AcuLaser CX17, wipe the surface of the document glass until it is clean and dry.
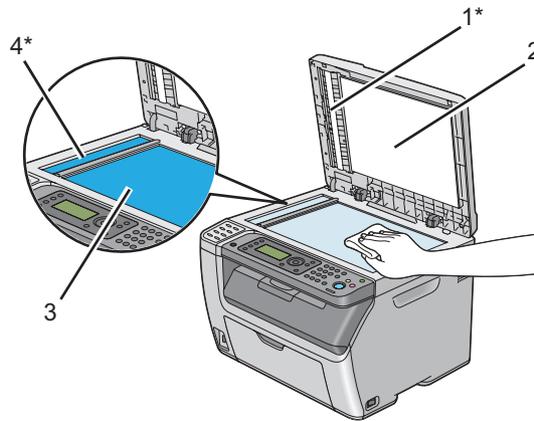
1*	Film
2	White Document Cover
3	Document Glass
4*	ADF Glass

*Available only on the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17W.

4. For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17W, wipe the underside of the white document cover and film until they are clean and dry.

   For the Epson AcuLaser CX17, wipe the underside of the white document cover until it is clean and dry.
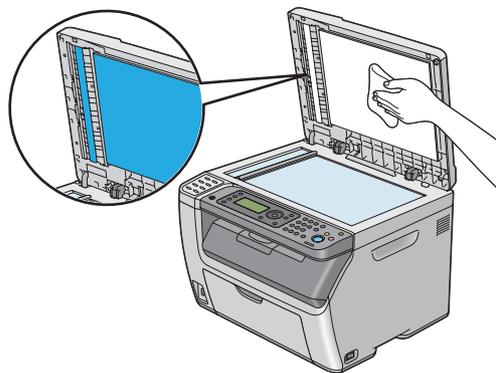
5. Close the document cover.
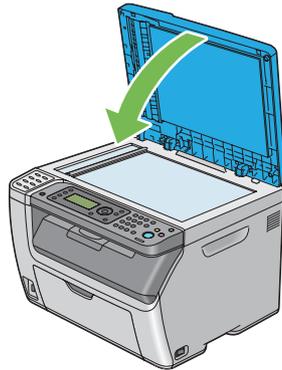
Cleaning the ADF Feed Roller (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17W Only)

Keep the ADF feed roller clean to ensure the best possible copies. Clean the ADF feed roller at regular intervals.

1. Open the ADF cover.

2. Wipe the ADF feed roller with a dry soft lint-free cloth or paper towel until it is clean.

If the ADF feed roller gets soiled with ink stains, paper from the ADF may also be soiled. In this case, slightly dampen a soft lint-free cloth or paper towel with a neutral detergent or water, and then remove the contamination from the ADF feed roller until it is clean and dry.
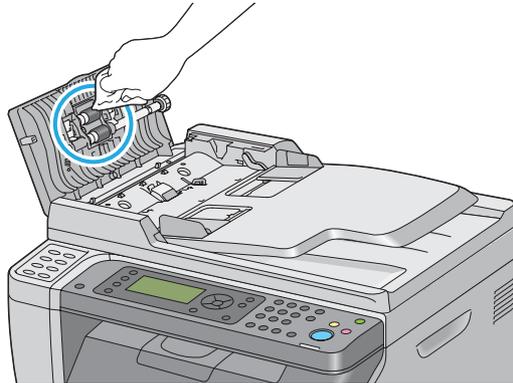
Cleaning Inside the Printer

1. Turn off the printer.

2. Open the toner access cover.
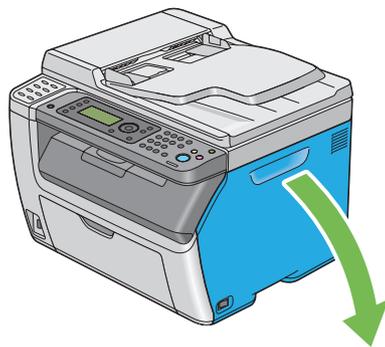
3. Pinch the toner cartridge firmly as shown in the illustration.
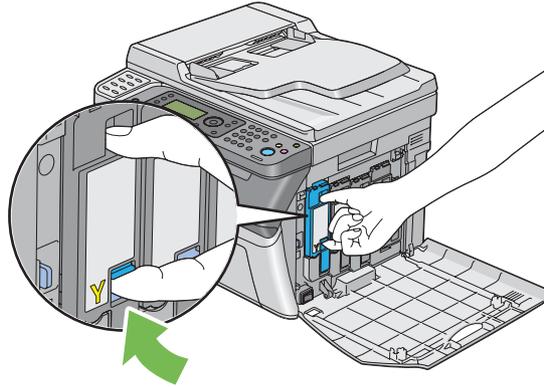
4. Pull the toner cartridge out.

    Important:
    Always pull the toner cartridge out slowly so you do not spill any toner.
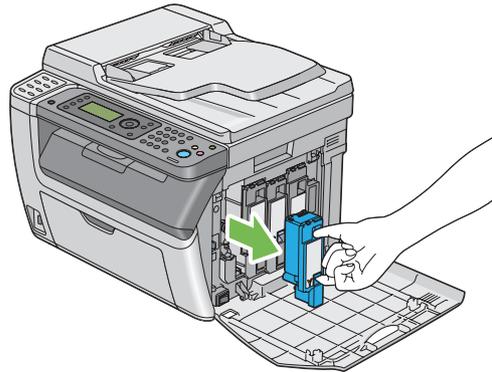
5. Pull the other three toner cartridges out as well.

6. Pull the print head cleaning rod out.
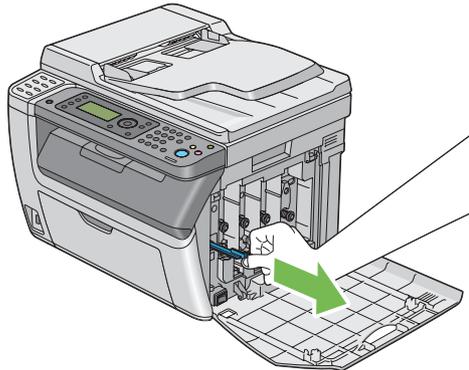
7. Insert the print head cleaning rod fully into the hole beside the arrow on the printer until its tip reaches the interior of the printer as illustrated below, and then pull it out.
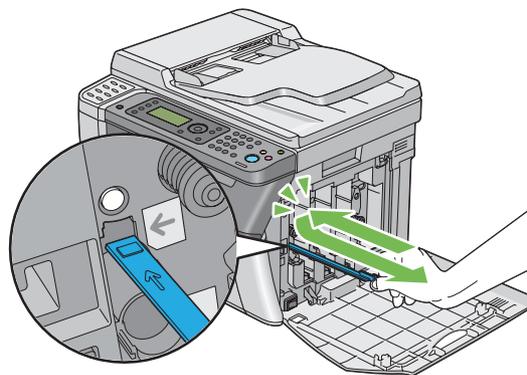
8. Repeat the same procedure for the other three holes.

9. Return the print head cleaning rod to its original location.
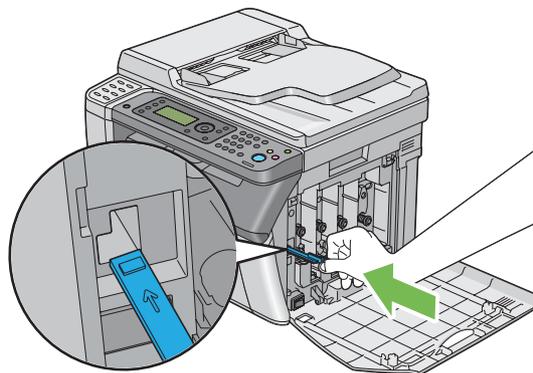
10. Replace the black toner cartridge by adjusting it to the associated cartridge holder, and then insert it firmly by pressing near the center of the label until the toner cartridge clicks.
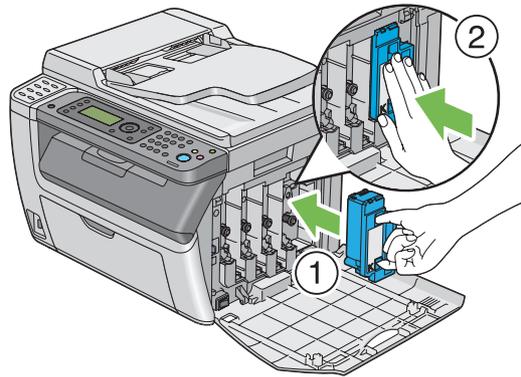
11. Replace the other three toner cartridges as well.

12. Close the toner access cover.
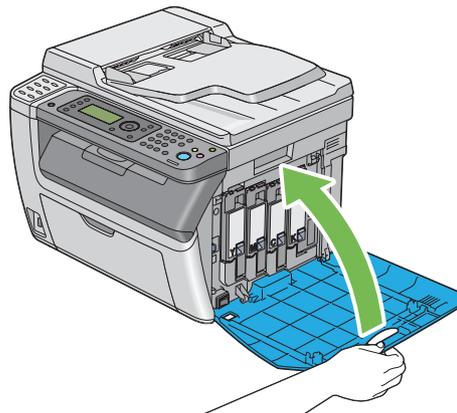
Cleaning the Color Toner Density (CTD) Sensor

Clean the CTD sensor only when an alert for the CTD sensor is shown on the **Printer Status** window or operator panel.

1. Ensure that the printer is turned off.

2. Push the rear cover handle and open the rear cover.
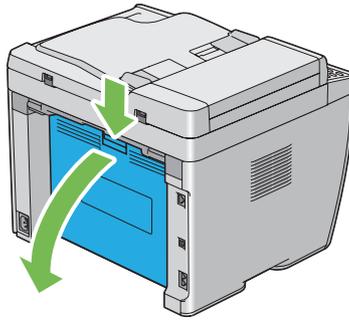
3. Clean the CTD sensor inside the printer with a clean dry cotton swab.
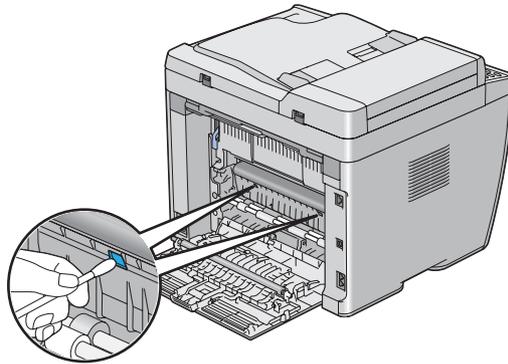
4. Close the rear cover.
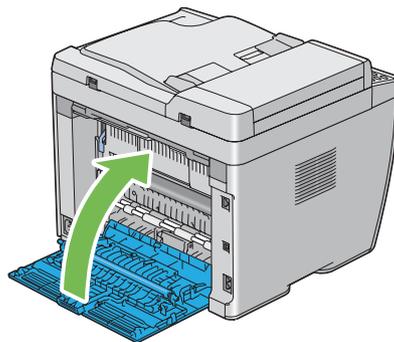
Replacing Toner Cartridges

Epson toner cartridges are available only through Epson.

It is recommended that you use Epson toner cartridges for your printer. Epson does not provide warranty coverage for problems caused by using consumables not supplied by Epson.

⚠️ *Warning:*
❏ *Use a broom or a wet cloth to wipe off spilled toner. Never use a vacuum cleaner for the spills. It may catch fire by electric sparks inside the vacuum cleaner and cause explosion. If you spill a large volume of toner, contact your local Epson representative.*

❏ *Never throw a toner cartridge into an open flame. Remaining toner in the cartridge may catch fire and cause burn injuries or explosion. If you have a used toner cartridge no longer needed, contact your local Epson representative for its disposal.*

⚠️ *Caution:*
❏ *Keep toner cartridges out of the reach of children. If a child accidentally swallows toner, spit it out, rinse mouth with water, drink water and consult a physician immediately.*

❏ *When replacing toner cartridges, be careful not to spill the toner. In case of any toner spills, avoid contact with clothes, skin, eyes and mouth as well as inhalation.*

❏ *If toner spills onto your skin or clothing, wash it off with soap and water. If you get toner particles in your eyes, wash it out with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes until irritation is gone. Consult a physician if necessary. If you inhale toner particles, move to a fresh air location and rinse your mouth with water. If you swallow toner, spit it out, rinse your mouth with water, drink plenty of water and consult a physician immediately.*

Important:
Do not shake the used toner cartridge to avoid spilling of the toner.

Overview

The printer has toner cartridges of four colors: black (K), yellow (Y), magenta (M), and cyan (C).

When a toner cartridge reaches its usable life-span, the following messages appear on the LCD panel.

Message (Example)	Action

`093-426 Printer`
 `Black Cartridge`
 `is Close to Life*`
	The specified toner cartridge has become low. Prepare a new one.
	
	 The error code differs depending on the color of the toner cartridge.
	
	 ❑ `093-426:Black`
	 ❑ `093-425:Cyan`
	 ❑ `093-424:Magenta`
	 ❑ `093-423:Yellow`

`Replace Cart.`
 `093-933 Printer`
 `Replace`
 `Black Cartridge`
	The specified toner cartridge has become end of its service life. Replace the old toner cartridge with a new one.
	
	 The error code differs depending on the color of the toner cartridge.
	
	 ❑ `093-933:Black`
	 ❑ `093-932:Cyan`
	 ❑ `093-931:Magenta`
	 ❑ `093-930:Yellow`

* This warning appears only when Epson toner cartridges are used (`Non-Genuine Mode` is set to `Off`.)

Important:
❑ *When placing a used toner cartridge on the floor or on a table, place a few sheets of paper under the toner cartridge to catch any toner that may spill.*

❑ *Do not reuse old toner cartridges once you remove them from the printer. Doing so can impair print quality.*

❑ *Do not shake or pound the used toner cartridges. The remaining toner may spill.*

❑ *We recommend you to use up the toner cartridges within one year after removing them from the packaging.*

Removing the Toner Cartridges

1. Turn off the printer.

2. Open the toner access cover.
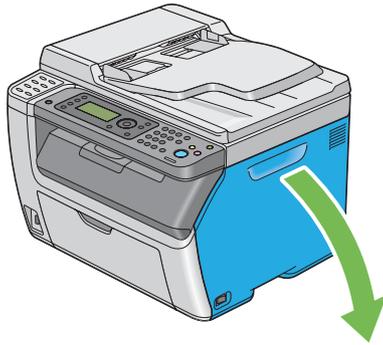
3. Spread a few sheets of paper on the floor or table where the removed toner cartridge is placed.

4. Pinch the toner cartridge firmly as shown in the illustration.
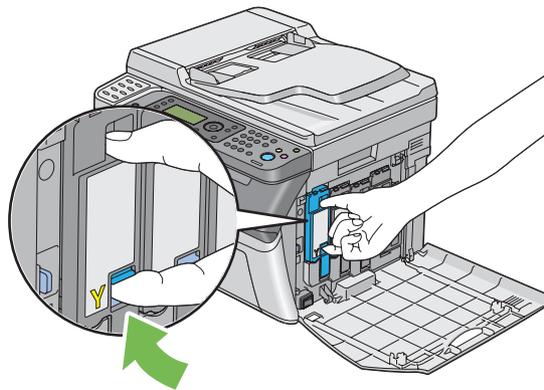
5. Pull the toner cartridge out.

Important:
Always pull the toner cartridge out slowly so you do not spill any toner.
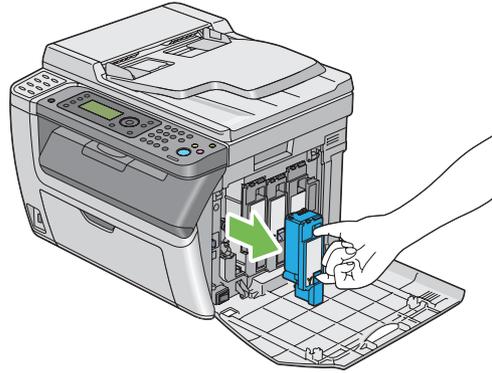
6. Place the toner cartridge slowly on the sheets of paper spread in step 3.

Installing a Toner Cartridge

1. Unpack a new toner cartridge of the desired color and shake it five to six times to distribute the toner evenly.
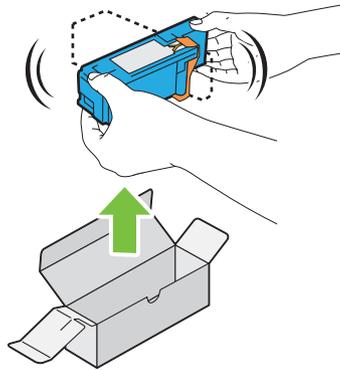
Note:
❏ *Ensure that the color of the new toner cartridge matches that on the handle before replacing it.*

❏ *Handle the toner cartridge carefully to avoid spilling of the toner.*

2. Remove the tape from the toner cartridge.
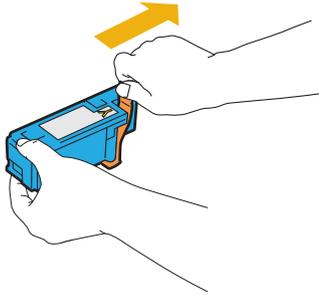
3. Adjust the toner cartridge to the associated cartridge holder, and then insert it firmly by pressing near the center of the label until the toner cartridge clicks.
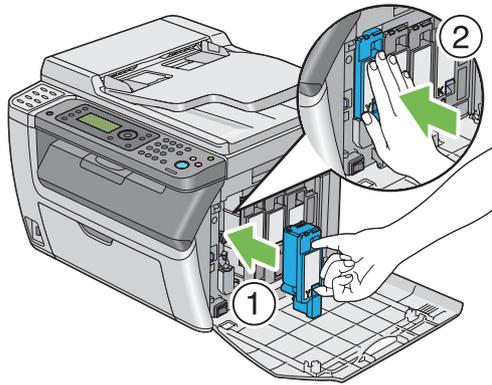
4. Close the toner access cover.
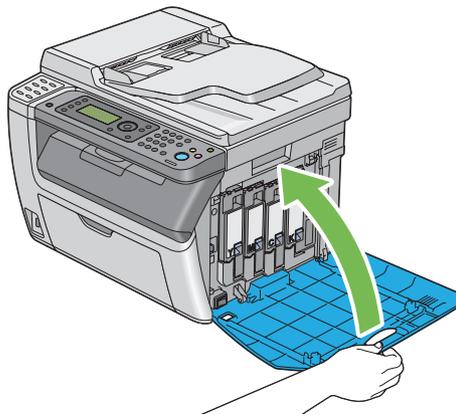
5. Pack the removed toner cartridge in the box in which the installed toner cartridge was packed up.

6. Take care not to contact with the spilled toner and remove the sheets of paper spread under the removed toner cartridge.

Ordering Supplies

The toner cartridges need to be ordered occasionally. Each toner cartridge includes installation instructions on the box.

Consumables

Important:
Use of consumables not recommended by Epson can impair machine quality and performance. Use only consumables recommended by Epson.

Product Name	Product Code
TONER CARTRIDGE(BLACK)	0614
TONER CARTRIDGE(YELLOW)	0611
TONER CARTRIDGE(MAGENTA)	0612
TONER CARTRIDGE(CYAN)	0613

When to Order Toner Cartridges

The LCD panel displays a warning when the toner cartridge nears its replacement time. Verify that you have replacements on hand. It is important to order a toner cartridge when the messages first appear to avoid interruptions to your printing. The LCD panel displays an error message when the toner cartridge must be replaced.

Important:
This printer is designed to provide the most stable performance and print quality when used with the recommended toner cartridges. Not using toner cartridges recommended for this machine degrades the performance and printing quality of the printer. You could also incur charges if the machine breaks down. To receive customer support and achieve the optimum performance of the printer, be sure to use recommended toner cartridges.

Storing Consumables

Store consumables in their original packaging until you need to use them. Do not store consumables in:

❏ Temperatures greater than 40 ˚C (140 ˚F).

❏ An environment with extreme changes in humidity or temperature.

❏ Direct sunlight.

❏ Dusty places.

❏ A car for a long period of time.

❏ An environment where corrosive gases are present.

❏ An environment with salty air.

Managing the Printer

Checking or Managing the Printer with EpsonNet Config (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17W Only)

When the printer is installed in a TCP/IP environment, you can check printer status and configure settings using a web browser on a network computer. You can also use EpsonNet Config to check the remaining volume of consumables and the paper loaded in this printer.

Note:
When using the printer as a local printer, you cannot use EpsonNet Config. For details about checking the status of a local printer, refer to "Checking Printer Status with Status Monitor (Windows Only)" on page 370.

Starting EpsonNet Config

Use the following procedure to start EpsonNet Config.

1. Launch your web browser.

2. Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar.

The EpsonNet Config page appears.

Using Help

For details regarding the items that can be set in each EpsonNet Config page, refer to the Help on the *Software Disc*.

Checking Printer Status with Status Monitor (Windows Only)

Status Monitor is a tool that is installed with your print driver. It automatically checks the printer status when you send a print job. Status Monitor can also check the status of the tray and remaining amount of toner cartridges.

Starting Status Monitor

Double-click the Status Monitor icon on the taskbar or right-click the icon and select **Printer Selection**.

If the Status Monitor icon is not displayed on the taskbar, open Status Monitor from the **start** menu.

The following procedure uses Microsoft® Windows® XP as an example.

1. Click **start** — **All Programs** — **EPSON** — your printer — **Activate Status Monitor**.

    The **Printer Selection** window appears.

2. Click the name of the desired printer from the list.

    The **Printer Status** Window appears.

For details about the functions of Status Monitor, refer to the Help of Status Monitor.

See Also:

Checking Printer Status Through E-mail (Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17W Only)

When connected in a network environment where sending and receiving of e-mail is possible, the printer can send an e-mail report to specified e-mail addresses containing the following information:

❏ The network settings and the printer status

❏ The error status which has occurred on the printer

Setting the E-mail Environment

Activate EpsonNet Config. On the **Properties** tab, configure the following settings according to your e-mail environment. After configuring the settings on each screen, always click **Apply** and then turn off/on the printer to reboot. For details about each item, refer to the Help on the *Software Disc*.

Item	Item to be configured	Description
General Setup — StatusMessenger	Recipient's E-mail Address	Set the e-mail address to which notices about changes in printer status or errors are sent.
	Notification Items	Set the contents of the notices to send in the e-mail.
Port Status	StatusMessenger	Select **Enabled**.
Protocol Settings — E-mail	SMTP Server Settings ❏ Machine's E-mail Address ❏ SMTP Server Address ❏ SMTP Server Port Number Send Authentication ❏ E-Mail Send Authentication ❏ Login Name ❏ Password ❏ Re-enter Password ❏ SMTP Server Connection Status POP3 Server Settings ❏ POP3 Server Address ❏ POP3 Server Port Number ❏ Login Name ❏ Password ❏ Re-enter Password	Select appropriate settings for sending and receiving e-mail.

Conserving Supplies

You can change several settings in your print driver to conserve toner cartridge and paper.

Supply	Setting	Function
Toner cartridge	**Toner Saving Mode** in the **Graphics** tab of the print driver	This check box allows the users to select a print mode that uses less toner. When this feature is used, the image quality will be lower than when it is not used.
Print media	**Multiple Up** in the **Layout** tab of the print driver	The printer prints two or more pages on one side of a sheet. The available numbers that each print driver can print one sheet of paper are as follows: ❏ Microsoft Windows Print Driver: 2, 4, 8, or 16 pages ❏ Mac OS® X Print Driver: 2, 4, 6, 9, or 16 pages Combined with the duplex setting, **Multiple Up** allows you to print up to 32 pages on one sheet of paper. (16 images on the front and 16 on the back)

Checking Page Counts

The total number of printed pages can be checked at the operator panel. Three meters are available: `Color Impression` (color prints), `Black Impression` (monochrome prints), and `Total Impression` (`Color Impression` + `Black Impression`).

The `Billing Meters` counts the number of pages printed properly. Single side print (including Multiple Up) is counted as one page, and 2-sided print (including Multiple Up) is counted as two. During 2-sided printing, if an error occurs after one side is printed properly, it is counted as one page.

When printing color data, which has been converted by using ICC profile on an application, with the Color setting, the data is printed by color even if it seems to be black and white data on the monitor. In that case, `Color Impression` and `Total Impression` are increased.

When doing 2-sided printing, a blank page may be inserted automatically depending on the settings of the application. In this case, the blank page is counted as one page. However, when doing 2-sided printing for odd number of pages, the blank page inserted to the rear side of the last odd page is not counted.

See Also:
"Billing Meters" on page 251

Use the following procedure to check a meter:

1. Press the **System** button.

2. Select Billing Meters, and then press the ⊙ᴋ button.

3. Check the values for each meter.

Moving the Printer

1. Turn off the printer.
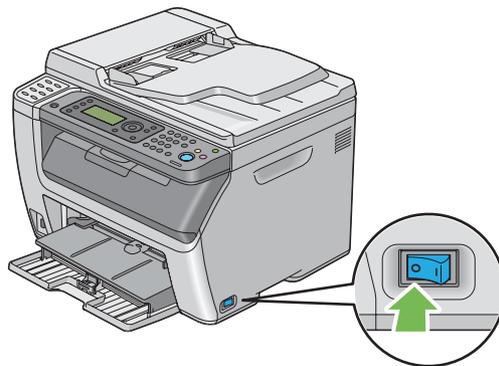
2. For the Epson AcuLaser CX17NF/CX17W, disconnect the power cord, interface cable, and any other cables.

   For the Epson AcuLaser CX17, disconnect the power cord and USB cable, and go to step 4.
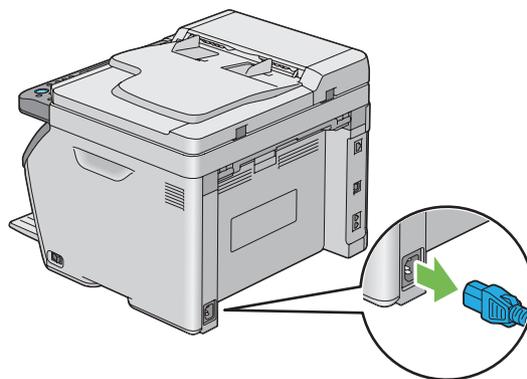
3. Remove any paper in the document output tray.

4. Remove any paper in the center output tray if there is. Close the output tray extension if it is extended.
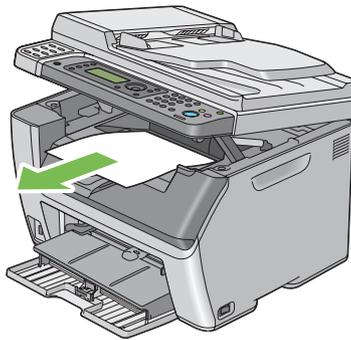
5. Remove any paper in the priority sheet inserter (PSI) or multipurpose feeder (MPF). Keep the paper wrapped and away from humidity and dirt.
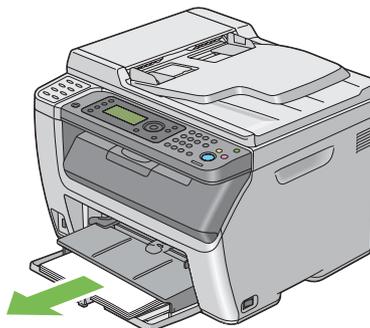
6. Push the PSI in.
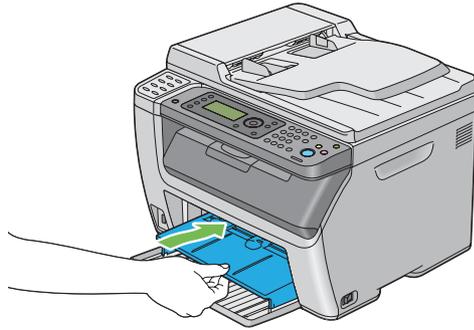
7. Slide the slide bar backward until it stops.
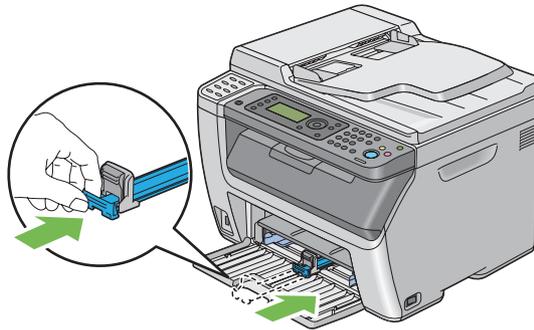
8. Close the front cover.
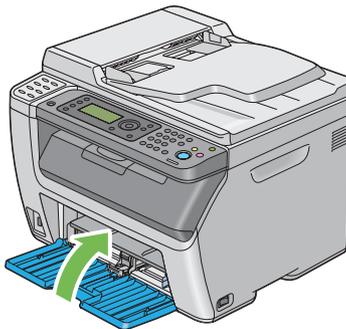
9. Lift the printer and move it gently.

10. Adjust the color registration before using your printer.

See Also:
"Adjusting Color Registration" on page 331

Appendix A
Where To Get Help

Contacting Epson Support

Before Contacting Epson

If your Epson product is not operating properly and you cannot solve the problem using the troubleshooting information in your product documentation, contact Epson support services for assistance. If Epson support for your area is not listed below, contact the dealer where you purchased your product.

Epson support will be able to help you much more quickly if you give them the following information:

❏ Product serial number
(The serial number label is usually on the back of the product.)

❏ Product model

❏ Product software version
(Click **About**, **Version Info**, or similar button in the product software.)

❏ Brand and model of your computer

❏ Your computer operating system name and version

❏ Names and versions of the software applications you normally use with your product

Help for Users in Europe

Check your **Pan-European Warranty Document** for information on how to contact Epson support.

Help for Users in Taiwan

Contacts for information, support, and services are:

World Wide Web (http://www.epson.com.tw)

Information on product specifications, drivers for download, and products enquiry are available.

Epson HelpDesk (Phone: +0800212873)

Our HelpDesk team can help you with the following over the phone:

❏ Sales enquiries and product information

❏ Product usage questions or problems

❏ Enquiries on repair service and warranty

Repair service center:

Telephone number	Fax number	Address
02-23416969	02-23417070	No.20, Beiping E. Rd., Zhongzheng Dist., Taipei City 100, Taiwan
02-27491234	02-27495955	1F., No.16, Sec. 5, Nanjing E. Rd., Songshan Dist., Taipei City 105, Taiwan
02-32340688	02-32345299	No.1, Ln. 359, Sec. 2, Zhongshan Rd., Zhonghe City, Taipei County 235, Taiwan
039-605007	039-600969	No.342-1, Guangrong Rd., Luodong Township, Yilan County 265, Taiwan
038-312966	038-312977	No.87, Guolian 2nd Rd., Hualien City, Hualien County 970, Taiwan
02-82273300	02-82278866	5F.-1, No.700, Zhongzheng Rd., Zhonghe City, Taipei County 235, Taiwan
03-2810606	03-2810707	No.413, Huannan Rd., Pingzhen City, Taoyuan County 324, Taiwan
03-5325077	03-5320092	1F., No.9, Ln. 379, Sec. 1, Jingguo Rd., North Dist., Hsinchu City 300, Taiwan
04-23291388	04-23291338	3F., No.510, Yingcai Rd., West Dist., Taichung City 403, Taiwan
04-23805000	04-23806000	No.530, Sec. 4, Henan Rd., Nantun Dist., Taichung City 408, Taiwan
05-2784222	05-2784555	No.463, Zhongxiao Rd., East Dist., Chiayi City 600, Taiwan

Telephone number	Fax number	Address
06-2221666	06-2112555	No.141, Gongyuan N. Rd., North Dist., Tainan City 704, Taiwan
07-5520918	07-5540926	1F., No.337, Minghua Rd., Gushan Dist., Kaohsiung City 804, Taiwan
07-3222445	07-3218085	No.51, Shandong St., Sanmin Dist., Kaohsiung City 807, Taiwan
08-7344771	08-7344802	1F., No.113, Shengli Rd., Pingtung City, Pingtung County 900, Taiwan

Help for Users in Singapore

Sources of information, support, and services available from Epson Singapore are:

World Wide Web (http://www.epson.com.sg)

Information on product specifications, drivers for download, Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ), Sales Enquiries, and Technical Support via e-mail are available.

Epson HelpDesk (Phone: (65) 6586 3111)

Our HelpDesk team can help you with the following over the phone:

❏ Sales enquiries and product information

❏ Product usage questions or problems

❏ Enquiries on repair service and warranty

Help for Users in Thailand

Contacts for information, support, and services are:

World Wide Web (http://www.epson.co.th)

Information on product specifications, drivers for download, Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ), and e-mail are available.

Epson Hotline (Phone: (66)2685-9899)

Our Hotline team can help you with the following over the phone:

❏ Sales enquiries and product information

❏ Product usage questions or problems

❏ Enquiries on repair service and warranty

Help for Users in Vietnam

Contacts for information, support, and services are:

Epson Hotline (Phone):   84-8-823-9239

Service Center: 80 Truong Dinh Street, District 1, Hochiminh City
                             Vietnam

Help for Users in Indonesia

Contacts for information, support, and services are:

World Wide Web (http://www.epson.co.id)

❏ Information on product specifications, drivers for download

❏ Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ), Sales Enquiries, questions through e-mail

Epson Hotline

❏ Sales enquiries and product information

❏ Technical support

    Phone   (62) 21-572 4350

    Fax   (62) 21-572 4357

Epson Service Center

Jakarta	Mangga Dua Mall 3rd floor No 3A/B Jl. Arteri Mangga Dua, Jakarta Phone/Fax: (62) 21-62301104
Bandung	Lippo Center 8th floor Jl. Gatot Subroto No.2 Bandung Phone/Fax: (62) 22-7303766
Surabaya	Hitech Mall lt IIB No. 12 Jl. Kusuma Bangsa 116 – 118 Surabaya Phone: (62) 31-5355035 Fax: (62)31-5477837
Yogyakarta	Hotel Natour Garuda Jl. Malioboro No. 60 Yogyakarta Phone: (62) 274-565478
Medan	Wisma HSBC 4th floor Jl. Diponegoro No. 11 Medan Phone/Fax: (62) 61-4516173
Makassar	MTC Karebosi Lt. Ill Kav. P7-8 Jl. Ahmad Yani No.49 Makassar Phone: (62)411-350147/411-350148

Help for Users in Hong Kong

To obtain technical support as well as other after-sales services, users are welcome to contact Epson Hong Kong Limited.

Internet Home Page

Epson Hong Kong has established a local home page in both Chinese and English on the Internet to provide users with the following information:

❏ Product information

❏ Answers to Frequently Asked Questions (FAQs)

❏ Latest versions of Epson product drivers

Users can access our World Wide Web home page at:

http://www.epson.com.hk

Technical Support Hotline

You can also contact our technical staff at the following telephone and fax numbers:

Phone: (852) 2827-8911

Fax: (852) 2827-4383

Help for Users in Malaysia

Contacts for information, support, and services are:

World Wide Web (http://www.epson.com.my)

❏ Information on product specifications, drivers for download

❏ Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ), Sales Enquiries, questions through e-mail

Epson Trading (M) Sdn. Bhd.

Head Office.

Phone: 603-56288288

Fax: 603-56288388/399

Epson Helpdesk

❏ Sales enquiries and product information (Infoline)

Phone: 603-56288222

❏ Enquiries on repair services & warranty, product usage and technical support (Techline)

Phone: 603-56288333

Help for Users in India

Contacts for information, support, and services are:

World Wide Web (http://www.epson.co.in)

Information on product specifications, drivers for download, and products enquiry are available.

Epson India Head Office - Bangalore

Phone: 080-30515000

Fax: 30515005

Epson India Regional Offices:

Location	Telephone number	Fax number
Mumbai	022-28261515 /16/17	022-28257287
Delhi	011-30615000	011-30615005
Chennai	044-30277500	044-30277575
Kolkata	033-22831589 / 90	033-22831591
Hyderabad	040-66331738/ 39	040-66328633

Location	Telephone number	Fax number
Cochin	0484-2357950	0484-2357950
Coimbatore	0422-2380002	NA
Pune	020-30286000 /30286001/30286002	020-30286000
Ahmedabad	079-26407176 / 77	079-26407347

Helpline

For Service, Product info or to order a cartridge - 18004250011 (9AM - 9PM) - This is a Toll-free number.

For Service (CDMA & Mobile Users) - 3900 1600 (9AM - 6PM) Prefix local STD code

Help for Users in the Philippines

To obtain technical support as well as other after sales services, users are welcome to contact the Epson Philippines Corporation at the telephone and fax numbers and e-mail address below:

Trunk Line:	(63-2) 706 2609
Fax:	(63-2) 706 2665
Helpdesk Direct Line:	(63-2) 706 2625
E-mail:	epchelpdesk@epc.epson.com.ph

World Wide Web (http://www.epson.com.ph)

Information on product specifications, drivers for download, Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ), and E-mail Enquiries are available.

Toll-Free No. 1800-1069-EPSON(37766)

Our Hotline team can help you with the following over the phone:

❏ Sales enquiries and product information

❏ Product usage questions or problems

❏ Enquiries on repair service and warranty

Index